

FUJITSU Server PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Installation Manual



Preface

This manual describes the functions and this manual describes how to set up this product, including the steps for installation of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series server, initialization, and software installation. The manual is intended for system administrators.

For details on the regulatory compliance statements and safety precautions, see the *PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Safety* and *Regulatory Information* (CA92344-0523).

Organization of this manual

This manual is organized as follows.

CHAPTER 1 Installation Overview

Chapter 1 describes the workflow up to actual operation of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series server

CHAPTER 2 Preparing for Main Unit Installation

Chapter 2 describes the preparation before main unit installation. This preparation includes work up to power cable connection.

CHAPTER 3 Work before Operating System Installation

Chapter 3 describes the work that must be done before you install an operating system on the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series server. The chapter also describes settings for actual operation and various setup works.

CHAPTER 4 Installation of Operating System and bundled software

Chapter 4 describes how to install the operating system and bundled software.

Chapter 5 describes how to make various necessary settings after operating system.

CHAPTER 6Work after installation

Chapter 6 describes the work performed after PRIMEQUEST 2000 series installation. This work includes configuring NTP and security.

CHAPTER 7Power ON and OFF of the partition

Chapter 7 describes partition power control.

Appendix A List of setting items

Appendix A provides links to Appendix A List of Settings in the *PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference* (CA92344-0539)

Appendix B About software

Appendix B provides a link to 3.3 Bundled Software in the *PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series General Description* (CA92344-0534).

Appendix C Configuring the SAN boot environment

Appendix C is a link to the PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manua.

Appendix D Notes on VMware installation

Appendix D describes the procedure for installing an internal hard disk in a RAID environment in VMware vSphere and provides notes on installation

Appendix E Setting up the NTP Server (Windows)

Appendix E describes how to specify and set of an NTP server for a specific Windows operating system Appendix F Starting HII Configuration Utility

Appendix F describes how to start HII Configuration Utility

Appendix G Starting Web BIOS

Appendix G describes how to start WebBIOS

Revision History

Edition	Date	Revised location (type)	Description
1	2014-08-12		- The edition is initialized to "01" for changing manual code
1 2014-08-12	All pages	- Added descriptions about Extended Partitioning function	
2	2014-10-07	All pages	- Added description about RHEL7
3	2015-02-03	Appendix F	- Added Starting HII Configuration Utility
4	2015-05-01	All pages	- Added PRIMEQUEST 2400E2/2800E2/2800B2
5	2015-09-29	Chapter 3	- Added LDAP
6	2015-10-30	Chapter 3	- Added LDAP(Novell eDirectory/OpenLDAP/OpenDS/Open DJ)
7		- Added "5.7.3 Storage of LAN card and CNA card configuration	
7 2016-01-29	2016-01-29	Chapter 5	information"
8	2016-02-16	Chapter 4	- Added warning about OS installation
		Chapter 5	- Added descriptions about sadump setting
9	2016-5-30	All pages	- Added PRIMEQUEST 2400E3/2800E3/2800B3
10 2016 11 20	Chapter 4	- Added warning about OS installation	
10	2016-11-28	Chapter 5	- Added warning about sadump
11	2017-01-16	Appendix D	- Added description about VMware vSphere 6.5
10	0017 00 00	All pages	- Added description about Widows Server 2016
12	2 2017-02-08	Chapter 3	- Added description about setting of Blue Screen Timeout
13	2017-02-28	Chapter 5	- Modified description about setting of sadump
		Chapter 4	- Added warning about OS installation with SVIM in the
14	2017-08-08		environment where Dynamic Reconfiguration is used.
		Appendix D	- Added description about VMware vShere 6

Product operating environment

This product is a computer intended for use in a computer room environment. For details on the product operating environment, see the following manual: *PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535)

Safety Precautions

Alert messages

This manual uses the following alert messages to prevent users and bystanders from being injured and to prevent property damage.

AWARNING

This indicates a hazardous (potentially dangerous) situation that is likely to result in death or serious personal injury if the user does not perform the procedure correctly.



This indicates a hazardous situation that could result in minor or moderate personal injury if the user does not perform the procedure correctly. This also indicates that damage to the product or other property may occur if the user does not perform the procedure correctly.

Important

This indicates information that could help the user use the product more efficiently.

Alert messages in the text

An alert statement follows an alert symbol. An alert statement is indented on both ends to distinguish it from regular text. Similarly, one space line is inserted before and after the alert statement.

AWARNING

Only Fujitsu certified service engineers should perform the following tasks on this product and the options provided by Fujitsu. Customers must not perform these tasks under any circumstances. Otherwise, electric shock, injury, or fire may result.

- Newly installing or moving equipment
- Removing the front, rear, and side covers
- Installing and removing built-in options
- Connecting and disconnecting external interface cables
- Maintenance (repair and periodic diagnosis and maintenance)

The List of important alert items table lists important alert items.

List of important alert items

This manual does not contain important alert items.

AWARNING

This indicates a hazardous (potentially dangerous) situation that is likely to result in death or serious personal injury if the user does not perform the procedure correctly.

Work	Warning	Location
Category		
	Field engineers perform the following tasks on this product.	1.1 Setup Workflow
Setup	Customers must not perform these tasks under any circumstances.	
	Otherwise, electric shock, injury, or fire may result.	
	- Newly installing or moving equipment	
	- Removing the front, rear, and side covers	
	- Installing and removing built-in options	
	- Connecting and disconnecting external interface cables	
	Maintenance (repair and periodic diagnosis and maintenance)	

ACAUTION

This indicates a hazardous situation that could result in minor or moderate personal injury if the user does not perform the procedure correctly. This also indicates that damage to the product or other property may occur if the user does not perform the procedure correctly.

Work	Warning	Location
Category		
Normal	The unit may be damaged or operating abnormally.	2.1 Safety Precautions
operation	- Follow the precautions, warnings, and instructions shown on the main unit.	
	- Do not block the vent holes.	
	- Do not install the main unit in a location exposed to direct sunlight or close to	
	a device that may generate large amounts of heat.	
	- Do not install the main unit in a location exposed to large amounts of dust,	
	corrosive gas, or salt spray.	
	- Do not install the main unit in a location subject to strong vibration. Install the	
	main unit on a flat surface.	
	- Use grounded Category 3 wiring or better. Using another type of grounded	
	wiring may cause abnormal operation.	
	- Do not route cables under the main unit. Do not allow cables to become taut.	
	- Do not disconnect the power cables while the main unit power is on.	
	- If it is hard to push the connector latch of a LAN cable or other cable when	
	attempting to disconnect the cable, push it with a flathead screwdriver.	
	Forcibly inserting a finger may cause personal injury or damage the unit.	
	- Do not place anything on top of the main unit. Do not work above or on top of	

Work	Warning	Location
Category		
	the main unit.	
	- Prevent rapid rises in the ambient temperature during winter. Such an abrupt	
	temperature change may cause condensation to form in the main unit. Allow	
	sufficient warm-up time before starting operation.	
	- Do not install the main unit close to a photocopier, air-conditioning unit,	
	welder, or other device that generates electromagnetic noise.	
	 Do not install the main unit close to a device that generates large amounts of electrical noise. 	
	- Do not connect the main unit to the same power supply line as an elevator in	
	the facility or other equipment that would expose it to sudden voltage drops.	
	- Implement antistatic measures at the installation site.	
	- Confirm that the power supply voltage and frequency are adequate	
	according to the respective ratings shown on the main unit.	
	- Do not insert or drop foreign matter into the openings of the main unit. The	
	main unit contains high-voltage components. If any metallic matter or other	
	electro-conductive object enters the main unit through an opening, it may	
	cause a short circuit. This may lead to fire, electric shock, or damage to the	
	main unit.	
	- For details on maintenance of the main unit, contact the distributor where you	
	purchased your product, or your sales representative.	
Normal	(Ignition)	3.2.1 Power-on/off of
operation	When over current is detected and the power is cut off by tripping the breaker of the AC power or optional power distribution box, there is a possibility that failure, such as short circuit occurring in the main unit. In such case, contact to your sales representative or field engineer without turning on the power supply again.	main unit
Normal	(Damage to data)	3.2.1 Power-on/off of
operation	Confirm that the System Power LED of the OPL is off before turning off the main	main unit
	power. If you turn off the main power while the System Power LED of the OPL is	
	on, data may be damaged.	
Normal	(Damage to data)	5.3Setting of sadump
operation	Confirm that selection of disk is right, when choosing a dumping device. If selection	
	is mistaken, data may be damaged.	

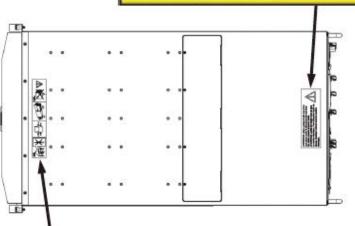
Warning labels



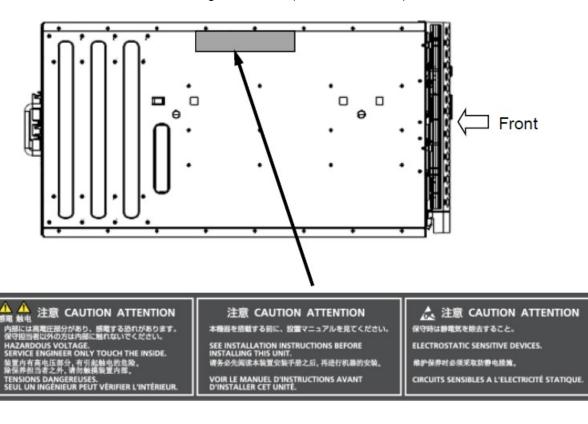
Never remove the warning labels.

Warning label location (the main cabinet top)

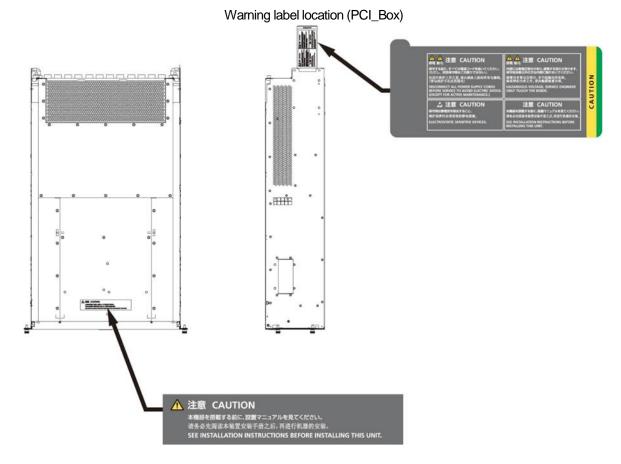
ATTENTION: Unit is equipped with more than one power cord. To disconnect the unit from the mains remove all power cords! ATTENTION: L'unité est équipée de plus d'un cordon électrique, Pour démonter l'unité du réseau électrique enlevez tous les cordons électriques! ACHTUNG: Gerät hat mehr als eine Netzanschlussleitung, Zur Trennung vom Versorgungsnetz alle Netzleitungen abziehen!







Warning label location (the main cabinet left)



Notes on Handling the Product

About this product

This product is designed and manufactured for standard applications. Such applications include, but are not limited to, general office work, personal and home use, and general industrial use. The product is not intended for applications that require extremely high levels of safety to be guaranteed (referred to below as "safety-critical" applications). Use of the product for a safety-critical application may present a significant risk of personal injury and/or death. Such applications include, but are not limited to, nuclear reactor control, aircraft flight control, air traffic control, mass transit control, medical life support, and missile launch control. Customers shall not use the product for a safety-critical system are requested to consult the Fujitsu sales representatives in charge.

Storage of accessories

Keep the accessories in a safe place because they are required for server operation.

Adding optional products

For stable operation of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series server, use only a Fujitsu-certified optional product as an added option.

Note that the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series server is not guaranteed to operate with any optional product not certified by Fujitsu.

Exportation/release of this product

Exportation/release of this product may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Law of Japan and/or US export control laws.

Maintenance

AWARNING

Only Fujitsu certified service engineers should perform the following tasks on this product and the options provided by Fujitsu. Customers must not perform these tasks under any circumstances. Otherwise, electric shock, injury, or fire may result.

- Newly installing or moving equipment
- Removing the front, rear, and side covers
- Installing and removing built-in options
- Connecting and disconnecting external interface cables
- Maintenance (repair and periodic diagnosis and maintenance)

ACAUTION

Only Fujitsu certified service engineers should perform the following tasks on this product and the options provided by Fujitsu. Customers must not perform these tasks under any circumstances. Otherwise, product failure may result. PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series General Description

- Unpacking an optional Fujitsu product, such as an optional adapter, delivered to the customer

Modifying or recycling the product

ACAUTION

Modifying this product or recycling a secondhand product by overhauling it without prior approval may result in personal injury to users and/or bystanders or damage to the product and/or other property.

Note on erasing data from hard disks when disposing of the product or transferring it

Disposing of this product or transferring it as is may enable third parties to access the data on the hard disk and use it for unforeseen purposes. To prevent the leakage of confidential information and important data, all of the data on the hard disk must be erased before disposal or transfer of the product.

However, it can be difficult to completely erase all of the data from the hard disk. Simply initializing (reformatting) the hard disk or deleting files on the operating system is insufficient to erase the data, even though the data appears at a glance to have been erased. This type of operation only makes it impossible to access the data from the operating system. Malicious third parties can restore this data.

If you save your confidential information or other important data on the hard disk, you should completely erase the data, instead of simply carrying out the aforementioned operation, to prevent the data from being restored. To prevent important data on the hard disk from being leaked when the product is disposed of or transferred, you will need to take care to erase all the data recorded on the hard disk on your own responsibility.

Furthermore, if a software license agreement restricts the transfer of the software (operating system and application software) on the hard disk in the server or other product to a third party, transferring the product without deleting the software from the hard disk may violate the agreement. Adequate verification from this point of view is also necessary.

Product and service inquiries

For all product use and technical inquiries, contact the distributor where you purchased your product, or a Fujitsu sales representative or systems engineer (SE). If you do not know the appropriate contact address for inquiries about the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series, use the Fujitsu contact line.

Fujitsu contact line

We accept Web inquiries. For details, visit our website: https://support.ts.fujitsu.com/IndexContact.asp?Ing=COM&In=true

Warranty

If a component failure occurs during the warranty period, we will repair it free of charge in accordance with the terms of the warranty agreement. For details, see the warranty.

Before requesting a repair

If a problem occurs with the product, confirm the problem by referring to 12.2 Troubleshooting in the *PRIMEQUEST 2000* Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537). If the error recurs, contact your sales representative or a field engineer. Confirm the model name and serial number shown on the label affixed to the right front of the device and report it. Also check any other required items beforehand according to 12.2 Troubleshooting in the *PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual* (CA92344-0537).

The system settings saved by the customer will be used during maintenance.

Manual

How to use this manual

This manual contains important information about the safe use of this product. Read the manual thoroughly to understand the information in it before using this product. Be sure to keep this manual in a safe and convenient location for quick reference.

Fujitsu makes every effort to prevent users and bystanders from being injured and to prevent property damage. Be sure to use the product according to the instructions in this manual.

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Law of Japan and/or US export control laws.

Manuals for the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series

The following manuals have been prepared to provide you with the information necessary to use the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series.

You can access HTML versions of these manuals at the following sites:

Japanese-language site:

http://www.fujitsu.com/jp/products/computing/servers/primequest/products/2000/catalog/manual/2000/

Global site: <u>http://www.fujitsu.com/global/products/computing/servers/mission-critical/primequest/</u> <u>http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/</u>

Title	Description	Manual code
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Getting	Describes what manuals you should read and how to access	CA92344-0522
Started Guide	important information after unpacking the PRIMEQUEST 2000	
	series server. (This manual comes with the product.)	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Safety	Contains important information required for using the	CA92344-0533
and Regulatory Information	PRIMEQUEST 2000 series safely.	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series	Describes the functions and features of the PRIMEQUEST 2000	CA92344-0534
General Description	series.	
SPARC Enterprise/ PRIMEQUEST	Provides the necessary information and concepts you should	C120-H007EN
Common Installation Planning	understand for installation and facility planning for SPARC	
Manual	Enterprise and PRIMEQUEST installations.	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series	Includes the specifications of and the installation location	CA92344-0535
Hardware Installation Manual	requirements for the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series.	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series	Describes how to set up the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series server,	CA92344-0536
Installation Manual	including the steps for installation preparation, initialization, and	
	software installation.	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series User	Describes how to use the Web-UI and UEFI to assure proper	CA92344-0538
Interface Operating Instructions	operation of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series server.	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series	Describes how to use tools and software for system	CA92344-0537
Administration Manual	administration and how to maintain the system (component	
	replacement and error notification).	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool	Provides information on operation methods and settings, including	CA92344-0539
Reference	details on the MMB and UEFI functions.	

Title	Description	Manual code
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series	Lists the messages that may be displayed when a problem occurs	CA92344-0540
Message Reference	during operation and describes how to respond to them.	
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series	Describes REMCS service installation and operation	CA92344-0542
REMCS Installation Manual		
PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series	Defines the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series related terms and	CA92344-0541
Glossary	abbreviations.	

Related manuals

The following manuals relate to the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series.

You can access these manuals at the following site:

http://www.fujitsu.com/global/products/computing/servers/mission-critical/primequest/

http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/

Contact your sales representative for inquiries about the ServerView manuals

Title	Description
ServerView Suite ServerView	Describes how to install and start ServerView Operations Manager in a Windows
Operations Manager Quick	environment.
Installation (Windows)	
ServerView Suite ServerView	Describes how to install and start ServerView Operations Manager in a Linux
Operations Manager Quick	environment.
Installation (Linux)	
ServerView Suite ServerView	Describes the installation procedure using ServerView Installation Manager.
Installation Manager	
ServerView Suite ServerView	Provides an overview of server monitoring using ServerView Operations Manager,
Operations Manager Server	and describes the user interface of ServerView Operations Manager.
Management	
ServerView Suite ServerView RAID	Describes RAID management using ServerView RAID Manager.
Management User Manual	
ServerView Suite Basic Concepts	Describes basic concepts about ServerView Suite.
ServerView Operations Manager	Describes installation and update installation of ServerView Linux Agent.
Installation ServerView Agents for	
Linux	
ServerView Operations Manager	Describes installation and update installation of ServerView Windows Agent.
Installation ServerView Agents for	
Windows	
ServerView Mission Critical Option	Describes the necessary functions unique to PRIMEQUEST (cluster linkage) and
User Manual	ServerView Mission Critical Option (SVmco), which is required for supporting these
	functions.

Title	Description
ServerView RAID Manager	Describes the installation and settings required to use ServerView RAID Manager
VMware vSphere ESXi 5 Installation	on the VMware vSphere ESXi 5 server.
Guide	
Modular RAID Controller	Provides technical information on using SAS RAID controllers.
LSI MegaRAID SAS 2.0 Software	RAID Ctrl SAS 6Gb 1GB (D3116C)
LSI MegaRAID SAS 2.0 Device	MegaRAID SAS 9286CV-8e
Driver Installation	
	Refer to the following URL:
	The Fujitsu Technology Solutions manuals server
	http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/
Modular RAID Controller	Provides technical information on using SAS RAID controllers.
LSI MegaRAID SAS 3.0 Software	PRAID EP400i / EP420i (D3216)
LSI Integrated RAID SAS 3.0	PRAID EP420e
Solution	
	Refer to the following URL:
	The Fujitsu Technology Solutions manuals server
	http://manuals.ts.fujitsu.com/

Abbreviations

This manual uses the following product name abbreviations.

Formal product name	Abbreviation
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2016 Standard	Windows, Windows Server 2016
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2016 Datacenter	
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2012 R2 Standard	Windows, Windows Server 2012 R2
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2012 R2 Datacenter	
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2012 Standard	Windows, Windows Server 2012
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2012 Datacenter	
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2008 R2 Standard	Windows, Windows Server 2008 R2
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2008 R2 Enterprise	
Microsoft (R) Windows Server (R) 2008 R2 Datacenter	
Red Hat (R) Enterprise Linux (R) 7 (for Intel64)	Linux, RHEL7, RHEL
Red Hat (R) Enterprise Linux (R) 6 (for Intel64)	Linux, RHEL6, RHEL
Oracle Linux 6 (x86_64)	Oracle Linux, Oracle Linux 6
VMware vSphere (R) 6	VMware, vSphere 6.x, VMware 6, VMware 6.x
VMware (R) ESXi (TM) 6	ESXi, ESXi 6, ESXi 6.x
VMware vSphere (R) 5	VMware, vSphere 5.x, VMware 5, VMware 5.x
VMware (R) ESXi (TM) 5	ESXi, ESXi 5, ESXi 5.x
SUSE (R) Linux Enterprise Server 12	SLES, SLES12

Formal product name	Abbreviation
SUSE (R) Linux Enterprise Server 11	SLES, SLES11

Trademarks

- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Hyper-V and BitLocker are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.
- Red Hat, the Shadowman logo and JBoss are registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- Intel, Intel Iogo, Intel Inside, Intel Inside Iogo, Intel Atom, Intel Atom Inside, Intel Core, Core Inside, Intel vPro, vPro Inside, Celeron, Celeron Inside, Itanium, Itanium Inside, Pentium, Pentium Inside, Xeon, Xeon Phi, Xeon Inside, Ultrabook are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation.
- Ethernet is a registered trademark of Fuji Xerox Co., Ltd. in Japan and is a registered trademark of Xerox Corp. in the United States and other countries.
- VMware is a trademark or registered trademark of VMware, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Novell is a registered trademark of Novell Inc. SUSE and the SUSE logo is a trademark, of SUSE LLC a Novell company, in the United States and other countries.
- Xen is a trademark or registered trademark of Citrix Systems, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.
- Other company names and product names are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
- Trademark indications are omitted for some system and product names in this manual.

Notation

This manual uses the following fonts and symbols to express specific types of information.

Font or symbols	Meaning	Example
Italics	Title of a manual that you should refer to	See the PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series
		Installation Manual (CA92344-0536).
[]	Window names as well as the names of	Click the [OK] button.
	buttons, tabs, and drop-down menus in	
	windows are enclosed in brackets.	

Notation for the CLI (command line interface)

The following notation is used for commands.

Command syntax

Command syntax is represented as follows.

- Variables requiring the entry of a value are enclosed in angle brackets < >
- Optional elements are enclosed in brackets [].
- Options for optional keywords are grouped in | (stroke) separated lists enclosed in brackets [].
- Options for required keywords are grouped in | (stroke) separated lists enclosed in braces { }.

Command syntax is written in a box.

Remarks

The command output shown in the PDF manuals may include line feeds at places where there is no line feed symbol (¥ at the end of the line).

Notes on notations

- If you have a comment or request regarding this manual, or if you find any part of this manual unclear, please take a moment to share it with us by filling in the form at the following webpage, stating your points specifically, and sending the form to us:

https://support.ts.fujitsu.com/IndexContact.asp?Ing=COM&In=true

- The contents of this manual may be revised without prior notice.
- In this manual, the Management Board and MMB firmware are abbreviated as "MMB."
- In this manual, IOU_10GbE and IOU_1GbE are collectively referred to as IO Units.
- Screenshots contained in this manual may differ from the actual product screen displays.
- The IP addresses, configuration information, and other such information contained in this manual are display examples and differ from that for actual operation.
- The PDF file of this manual is intended for display using Adobe(R) Reader(R) in single page viewing mode at 100% zoom.

This manual shall not be reproduced or copied without the permission of Fujitsu Limited. Copyright 2014-2017 FUJITSU LIMITED

Contents

Preface		i
CHAPTER	1 Installation Overview	1
1.1	Setup Workflow	1
1.1.1	Work performed by a field engineer	1
1.1.2	Work performed by the user	2
CHAPTER	2 Preparing for Main Unit Installation	3
2.1	Safety Precautions	3
2.2	Before Installing the Main Unit	4
2.3	Checking Environmental Conditions	4
2.4	Preparing the Power Supply Equipment	4
2.4.1	Electrical specifications	4
2.4.2	Facility power requirements and characteristics	5
2.4.3	Grounding	5
2.5	Checking the Installation Site	5
2.6	Preparing to Install the Main Unit	5
2.7	Confirming the Supplied Parts	6
2.8	Mounting the Main Unit in a 19-inch Rack	6
2.9	Connecting the Power Cables	6
CHAPTER	3 Work before Operating System Installation	9
3.1	Before Starting Setup	9
3.1.1	MMB Settings	9
3.1.2	Partition Settings	9
3.2	System Startup	.10
3.2.1	Power-on/off of main unit	.10
3.3	Connection and Setting of MMB	.11
3.3.1	Connecting the MMB console PC	.12
3.3.2	MMB Initialization	.13
3.3.3	Setting of Connection for Actual operating Environment	.15
3.3.4	Login to MMB	.17
3.3.5	Web-UI Window View	.19
3.3.6	Network set up of MMB	.19
3.3.7	Set up of telnet	.21
3.3.8	Configuration of DNS server	.23
3.3.9	Set up of Alarm E-Mail	.25
3.3.10	Registration of User Account	.27
3.3.11	Setting of System Name	.29
3.3.12	Setting of Date and Time	.30
3.4	Partition Configuration (Physical Partition)	.32
3.4.1	Setting the partition configuration	.32
3.4.2	Setting the Home SB	.35
3.4.3	Setting of Reserved SB	.37
3.4.4	Partition name settings	.45

3.4.5	Various mode settings	46		
3.4.6	Settings of Console Redirection	47		
3.4.7	Power OFF and ON of the partition			
3.4.8	Confirmation of partition information			
3.5	Partition Configuration (Extended Partitioning)	50		
3.5.1	Enabling the Extended Partitioning function	50		
3.5.2	Generating the Extended Partition	51		
3.5.3	Assigning SB resources to Extended Partition	53		
3.5.4	Assigning IOU resources to Extended Partition	55		
3.5.5	Assigning PCI_Box resources to Extended Partition	56		
3.5.6	Various mode settings	57		
3.5.7	Settings of Console Redirection	58		
3.5.8	Setting of Extended Socket	60		
3.5.9	Power OFF and ON of the Extended Partition	62		
3.5.10	Confirmation of Extended Partition information	62		
3.6	Setting of LDAP	63		
3.6.1	User Management using an LDAP directory service	63		
3.6.2	Overview of LDAP settings	64		
3.6.3	Setting procedure of LDAP (Active Directory)	65		
3.7	Storage of the configuration information	77		
3.7.1	Backup of the MMB configuration information	77		
CHAPTER	4 Installation of Operating System and bundled software	78		
4.1	Installation procedure of Operating System and bundled software	78		
4.2	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition	79		
4.2	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition	81		
4.2 4.3	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device	81 81		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting	81 81 82		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation	81 81 82 82		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/ISCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system	81 81 82 82 83		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/ISCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed	81 81 82 82 83 83		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/ISCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation	81 82 82 82 83 85 85		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/ISCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD	81 82 82 83 85 85 85		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/ISCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 85		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Presetting Preparations for installation	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/ISCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Presetting Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 87		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/SCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SDD after installation Presetting Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD Procedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 86 87 89 90		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4 4.4.5	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SDD after installation Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 86 87 89 90		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4 4.4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5.1 4.5.2	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/ISCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system. Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation. After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD. Procedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device Presetting Preparation for installation	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 85 86 87 89 90 90 90		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4 4.4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5.1	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD. Procedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Execution of installation Execution of installation	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 87 90 90 90 91		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4 4.4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5.1 4.5.2 4.5.1 4.5.2 4.5.3 4.5.4	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD Procedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device Presetting Presetting Presetting Procedures to installation Execution of installation Execution of installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 87 90 90 90 91 93		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4 4.4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5.1 4.5.2 4.5.3	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparation for installation Precedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Execution of installation After Installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation After Installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation After Installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation After Installation, connecting SAN and internal HDD/SSD	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 87 90 90 90 91 93 94		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.3 4.4.4 4.4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5.1 4.5.2 4.5.3 4.5.4 4.5.5 4.6	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD. Procedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device Presetting Preparation for installation After Installation for installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation After Installation for installation Execution of installation After Installation for installation After Installation for installation Presetting Precedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device Presetting Precedure to install RHEL into internal HDD/SSD. Procedure to installation After Installation Procedure to installation Procedure to install RHEL into internal HDD/SSD.	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 87 90 90 90 91 93 94 95		
4.2 4.3 4.3.1 4.3.2 4.3.3 4.3.4 4.3.5 4.4 4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4 4.4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5 4.5.1 4.5.2 4.5.3 4.5.4 4.5.5	Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Installation of operating system Bundled software setting after installation is completed Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparations for installation Installation of operating system Setting the bundled software after completion of installation After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD Presetting Preparation for installation Precedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device Presetting Preparation for installation Execution of installation After Installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation After Installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation After Installation Configuring Bundled Software after Installation After Installation, connecting SAN and internal HDD/SSD	81 82 82 83 85 85 85 86 86 86 87 90 90 90 91 93 95 95		

4.6.3	Installation	96		
4.6.4	Configuring Bundled Software after Installation			
4.6.5	After installation, connecting SAN with internal HDD/SSD			
4.7	Procedure to install VMware on the SAN storage device	100		
4.7.1	Presetting	100		
4.7.2	Preparation of installation	101		
4.7.3	Installation of VMware	102		
4.7.4	Setting of Software Watchdog	104		
4.7.5	VMware Installation completion.	104		
4.7.6	Installation of Bundled Software	104		
4.8	Procedure to install VMware into internal HDD/SSD	105		
4.8.1	Presetting	105		
4.8.2	Preparation of installation	105		
4.8.3	VMware installation	106		
4.8.4	Setting of notification in case that OS freezes	107		
4.8.5	Completion of VMware installation	107		
4.8.6	Installation of the bundled software	107		
4.9	Procedure of Hyper-V installation	108		
4.10	Procedure of KVM installation	108		
4.11	Procedure to install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server into the SAN Storage Unit	109		
4.11.1	Presetting	109		
4.11.2	Preparation of installation	110		
4.11.3	Installation	110		
4.11.4	Configuring Bundled Software after Installation	111		
4.11.5	After installation, connecting SAN and internal HDD/SSD	111		
4.12	Procedure to install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server into the Internal HDD	112		
4.12.1	Presetting	112		
4.12.2	Preparing for Installation	112		
4.12.3	Installation	113		
4.12.4	Configuring Bundled Software after Installation	114		
4.12.5	After completing OS installation, configure the bundled software. After installation, connecting SAN and internal			
HDD/3	SSD 114			
CHAPTER	5 Work after Operating System installation	115		
5.1	Types of work	115		
5.2	Setting of SVS (SVagent/SVAgentless Service/SVmco)	115		
5.2.1	Management LAN setting for SVagent	116		
5.3	Setting of sadump	118		
5.4	Setup of dump environment (Windows)	128		
5.4.1	About memory dump file/paging file	128		
5.5	Setup of dump environment (Linux)	128		
5.5.1	How to use sadump (Linux)	128		
5.6	Setup of NTP client	131		
5.7	Saving management and configuration information	131		
5.7.1	Storage of MMB configuration information	131		
5.7.2	Storage of BIOS configuration information	132		

5.7.3	Storage of LAN card and CNA card configuration information1			
5.8	"Write Policy" recommended setting of SAS array controller card			
5.9	Setup of Serial Port			
5.9.1	Setup of Serial Port (Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x)			
5.9.2	Setup of Serial Port (Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x)			
5.9.3	5.9.3 Setup of Serial Port (SUSE (R) Linux Enterprise Server 12)			
CHAPTER	6 Work after installation	135		
6.1	Redundant configuration of network adaptor	135		
6.2	NTP Configuration	136		
6.2.1	Method of operating NTP in PRIMEQUEST 2000 series	136		
6.2.2	Setting NTP server	138		
6.3	Configuring DNS server	139		
6.4	Set up of SMTP	139		
6.5	Set up of security	139		
6.5.1	Set up of Access Control	140		
6.5.2	Set up of SNMP	142		
6.5.3	Set up of SSH	146		
6.5.4	HTTPS Settings	147		
6.6	Schedule operations	147		
CHAPTER	7 Power ON and OFF of the partition	148		
7.1	Related to the power ON and OFF of the partition	148		
7.1.1	Power ON of the partition	148		
7.1.2	Power OFF of the partition	149		
Appendix A	A List of setting items	151		
A.1 Setti	ng items of MMB	151		
A.2 Setti	ng items of UEFI	151		
A.3 Setti	A.3 Setting items of BMC			
Appendix E	Appendix B About software			
Appendix (C Configuring the SAN boot environment	153		
Appendix [D Notes on VMware installation	154		
D.1 Build	ling the RAID environment in the VMware internal disk	154		
D.2 Insta	Illing VMware Bundled Software	154		
D.3 Setti	ng of PCI Bus mode	154		
D.4 Setti	ng of Address Range Mirror	155		
Appendix E	E Setting up the NTP Server (Windows)	156		
E.1 Ove	E.1 Overview of NTP Client Settings			
E.2 NTP	E.2 NTP Settings in Windows Server 2016			
E.2.1	Specifying an NTP Server	158		
E.2.2	Synchronization Interval and Startup Settings of NTP Service	160		
E.2.3	Event Task Settings	163		
E.3 NTP	Settings in Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2012	168		
E.3.1	Specifying an NTP Server	168		
E.3.2	E.3.2 Synchronization Interval and Startup Settings of NTP Service			
	E.3.3 Event Task Settings			
E.4 NTP	E.4 NTP Settings in Windows Server 2008 R2			

E.4.1 Specifying an NTP Server	180
E.4.2 Synchronization Interval and Startup Settings of NTP Service	183
E.4.3 Event Task Settings	186
Appendix F Starting HII Configuration Utility	191
F.1 Staring HII Configuration Utility	191
F.2 Method of identifying position where SAS RAID Controller is mounted	193
F.3 Method of identifying SB where SAS RAID Controller is mounted	196
Appendix G Starting Web BIOS	203
Appendix H Allocation Order of PCI Bus Number	207

Figures

FIGURE 2.1 Power cable socket locations (PRIMEQUEST2000 Series)	
FIGURE 2.2 Power cable socket locations (PCI_Box)	
FIGURE 3.1 External Views of Mounting Locations and External interface of MMB	12
FIGURE 3.2 Location of MMB user port	15
FIGURE 3.3 Network Configuration and IP Address of Management LAN	16
FIGURE 3.4 MMB Web-UI [Login] Window	18
FIGURE 3.5 Example of [IPv4 Interface] Window	20
FIGURE 3.6 Example of [IPv6 Interface] Window	
FIGURE 3.7 Example of [Network Protocols] Window	22
FIGURE 3.8 Example of [IPv4 Interface] Window	23
FIGURE 3.9 Example of [IPv6 Interface] Window	24
FIGURE 3.10 Example of [Alarm E-Mail] Window	25
FIGURE 3.11 Example of [Alarm E-Mail Filtering Condition] Window	26
FIGURE 3.12 Example of [User List] Window	27
FIGURE 3.13 Example of [Add User] Window	28
FIGURE 3.14 Example of [Edit User] Window	28
FIGURE 3.15 [System Information] Window Example	29
FIGURE 3.16 [Date/ Time] Window Example	30
FIGURE 3.17 [Management LAN Port Configuration] Windows Example	31
FIGURE 3.18 [Partition Configuration] Window Example (PRIMEQUEST 2800E3/2800E2/2800E)	32
FIGURE 3.19 Example of [Add SB/IOU to Partition] Window	33
FIGURE 3.20 [Partition Configuration] Window Example	34
FIGURE 3.21 Example of [Remove SB/IOU from Partition] Window	35
FIGURE 3.22 Example of [Partition Home] Window	36
FIGURE 3.23 Example of [Reserved SB Configuration] Window	37
FIGURE 3.24 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout ([Configure] tab)	40
FIGURE 3.25 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout (Edit screen of [Edit Advanced System Settings)	41
FIGURE 3.26 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout (After searching BlueScreenTimeout)	42
FIGURE 3.27 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout ([System] tab)	43
FIGURE 3.28 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout (After searching BlueScreenTimeout)	44
FIGURE 3.29 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout ([Edit Option] screen)	44
FIGURE 3.30 Example of [Partition Configuration] Window	45
FIGURE 3.31 Example of [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] Window	47
FIGURE 3.32 Example of [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] Window	
FIGURE 3.33 Example of [Information] Window	49
FIGURE 3.34 [Mode] Window Example	50
FIGURE 3.35 [Partition Configuration] Window Example	51
FIGURE 3.36 Example of [Add SB/IOU to Partition] Window	
FIGURE 3.37 Example of [Extended Partition Configuration of SB Resources] Window	53
FIGURE 3.38 Example of [Extended Partition Configuration of IOU Resources] Window	55
FIGURE 3.39 Example of [Extended Partition Configuration of PCI_Box Resources] Window	56
FIGURE 3.40 Example of [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] Window	58

FIGURE 3.41 Example of [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] Window	59
FIGURE 3.42 Example of [Mode] Window	60
FIGURE 3.43 Example of [Extended Socket Configuration] Window	61
FIGURE 3.44 Example of [Information] Window	62
FIGURE 3.45 User Management using an LDAP	63
FIGURE 3.46 Overview of LDAP settings	64
FIGURE 3.47 [LDAP User Group List] Window	66
FIGURE 3.48 [Add LDAP User Group] Window	67
FIGURE 3.49 [LDAP User Group List] Window (after generating User Group)	68
FIGURE 3.50 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (1/2)	69
FIGURE 3.51 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (2/2)	69
FIGURE 3.52 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (The setting example 1)	71
FIGURE 3.53 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (The setting example 2)	71
FIGURE 3.54 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (OpenLDAP) (The setting example 1)	74
FIGURE 3.55 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (OpenLDAP) (The setting example 2)	74
FIGURE 3.56 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Test LDAP)	75
FIGURE 3.57 Dialog box which in case connection test is succeeded.	76
FIGURE 3.58 Dialog box which in case connection test is failed.	76
FIGURE 3.59 Example of [Backup/Restore MMB Configuration] Window	77
FIGURE 4.1 File Structure	93
FIGURE 4.2 File Structure	98
FIGURE 5.1 Example of Device Manager Menu	119
FIGURE 5.2 Main menu (sadump)	119
FIGURE 5.3 sadump set-up menu	120
FIGURE 5.4 sadump set-up menu	120
FIGURE 5.5 Main menu (sadump)	121
FIGURE 5.6 Dump Device Maintenance Menu	121
FIGURE 5.7 Dump Device Structure Menu	122
FIGURE 5.8 Dump Device Selection Menu	122
FIGURE 5.9 Dump Device Selection Menu	123
FIGURE 5.10 Dump Device Structure Menu	124
FIGURE 5.11 Dump Device Maintenance Menu	124
FIGURE 5.12 Dump Device Setting Menu	125
FIGURE 5.13 Dump Device List Menu	125
FIGURE 5.14 Dump Device Setting Menu	126
FIGURE 5.15 Dump Device Maintenance Menu	126
FIGURE 5.16 Main Menu (sadump)	127
FIGURE 5.17 Example of [Backup/Restore MMB Configuration] Window	132
FIGURE 5.18 Example of [Backup BIOS Configuration]	
FIGURE 6.1 External network configuration	135
FIGURE 6.2 Operation Diagram when External NTP Server is used (When three NTP servers are used)	
FIGURE 6.3 Example of [Date/Time] Window	138
FIGURE 6.4 Example of [Access Control] Window	140
FIGURE 6.5 Example of [Add Filter] Window	141
FIGURE 6.6 Example of [Network Protocols] Window	142

FIGURE 6.7 Example of [SNMP Community] Window	. 143
FIGURE 6.8 Example of [SNMP Trap] Window	. 144
FIGURE 6.9 Example of [SNMP v3 Configuration]	. 145
FIGURE 6.10 Example of [Network Protocols] Window	. 146
FIGURE 6.11 Example of [Network Protocols] window	. 147
FIGURE 7.1 Example of [Power Control] window	. 149
FIGURE 7.2 Example of [Power Control] window	. 150
Figure E.1 [Date and Time] window (1)	. 158
Figure E.2 [Date and Time] window (2)	. 159
Figure E.3 [Internet Time Settings] dialog box	. 159
Figure E.4 [Registry Editor] selection window	. 160
Figure E.5 [Registry Editor] window	. 161
Figure E.6 [Services] window	. 161
Figure E.7 [Windows Time Properties] window	. 162
Figure E.8 [Task Scheduler] window	. 163
Figure E.9 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Create a Basic Task)	. 164
Figure E.10 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Task Trigger)	. 164
Figure E.11 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When an Event Is Logged)	. 165
Figure E.12 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action)	. 165
Figure E.13 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program)	. 166
Figure E.14 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Finish)	. 166
Figure E.15 [Properties] dialog box	. 167
Figure E.16 [Select User or Group] window	. 167
FIGURE E.0.17 [Date and Time] window (1)	. 168
FIGURE E.0.18 [Date and Time] window (2)	. 169
FIGURE E.0.19 [Internet Time Settings] window	. 170
FIGURE E.0.20 [Registry Editor] selection window	. 171
FIGURE E.0.21 [Registry Editor] window	. 172
FIGURE E.0.22 [Windows Time Properties] window	. 173
FIGURE E.0.23 [Task Scheduler] window	. 174
FIGURE E.0.24 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Create a Basic Task)	. 175
	. 175
FIGURE E.0.25 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Task Trigger)	
FIGURE E.0.25 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Task Trigger) FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged)	. 176
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged)	. 177
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action)	. 177 . 177
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action) FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program)	. 177 . 177 . 178
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action) FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program) FIGURE E.0.29 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary)	. 177 . 177 . 178 . 178 . 178
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action) FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program) FIGURE E.0.29 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary) FIGURE E.0.30 [Properties] dialog box	. 177 . 177 . 178 . 178 . 178 . 179
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action) FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program) FIGURE E.0.29 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary) FIGURE E.0.30 [Properties] dialog box FIGURE E.0.31 [Select User or Group] window FIGURE E.0.32 [Date and Time] window (1) FIGURE E.0.33 [Date and Time] window (2)	. 177 . 177 . 178 . 178 . 178 . 179 . 180 . 181
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action) FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program) FIGURE E.0.29 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary) FIGURE E.0.30 [Properties] dialog box FIGURE E.0.31 [Select User or Group] window FIGURE E.0.32 [Date and Time] window (1) FIGURE E.0.33 [Date and Time] window (2) FIGURE E.0.34 [Internet Time Settings] window	. 177 . 177 . 178 . 178 . 178 . 179 . 180 . 181 . 182
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action) FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program) FIGURE E.0.29 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary) FIGURE E.0.30 [Properties] dialog box FIGURE E.0.31 [Select User or Group] window FIGURE E.0.32 [Date and Time] window (1) FIGURE E.0.33 [Date and Time] window (2)	. 177 . 177 . 178 . 178 . 178 . 179 . 180 . 181 . 182
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged)	. 177 . 177 . 178 . 178 . 178 . 179 . 180 . 181 . 182 . 183 . 183
FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged) FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action) FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program) FIGURE E.0.29 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary) FIGURE E.0.30 [Properties] dialog box FIGURE E.0.31 [Select User or Group] window FIGURE E.0.32 [Date and Time] window (1) FIGURE E.0.33 [Date and Time] window (2) FIGURE E.0.34 [Internet Time Settings] window FIGURE E.0.35 [Run] window	. 177 . 177 . 178 . 178 . 179 . 180 . 181 . 182 . 183 . 183 . 184

FIGURE E.0.39 [Task Scheduler] window	. 186
FIGURE E.0.40 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Create a Basic Task)	. 187
FIGURE E.0.41 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Task Trigger)	. 187
FIGURE E.0.42 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged)	. 188
FIGURE E.0.43 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action)	. 188
FIGURE E.0.44 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program)	. 189
FIGURE E.0.45 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary)	. 189
FIGURE E.0.46 [Properties] dialog box	. 190
FIGURE E.0.47 [Select User or Group] window	. 190
FIGURE F.0.1 [Boot Manager] window	. 191
FIGURE F.0.2 [Device Manager] window	. 192
FIGURE F.0.3 [Boot Manager] window	. 193
FIGURE F.0.4 [Device Manager] window	. 194
FIGURE F.0.5 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window	. 194
FIGURE F.0.6 HII Configuration Utility [Controller Management] window	. 195
FIGURE F.0.7 [Boot Manager] window	. 196
FIGURE F.0.8 [Device Manager] window	. 197
FIGURE F.0.9 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window	. 197
FIGURE F.0.10 HII Configuration Utility [Device management] window	. 198
FIGURE F.0.11 HII Configuration Utility [Select operation] window	. 198
FIGURE F.0.12 HII Configuration Utility [Device Management] window	. 199
FIGURE F.0.13 HII Configuration Utility [Success] window	. 199
FIGURE F.0.14 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window	. 200
FIGURE F.0.15 HII Configuration Utility [Select operation] window	. 201
FIGURE F.0.16 HII Configuration Utility [Device management] window	. 201
FIGURE F.0.17 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window	. 202
FIGURE F.0.18 [Device Manager] window	. 202

Tables

TABLE 1.1 Work performed by the user2
TABLE 2.1 Accessories required in main unit installation5
TABLE 3.1 Flow of connection and setting of MMB11
TABLE 3.2 External interface of MMB12
TABLE 3.3 contents of setting of terminal software13
TABLE 3.4 contents of setting of terminal software13
TABLE 3.5 Settings required for connecting external LAN16
TABLE 3.6 URL to be entered for Login
TABLE 3.7 Default user account/password18
TABLE 3.8 Example for Extended Socket (Zone) configuration61
TABLE 3.9 Setting item in [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory)70
TABLE 3.10 Setting item in [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Novell eDirectory/OpenLDAP/OpenDS/OpenDJ)
TABLE 3.10 Setting item in [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Novell eDirectory/OpenLDAP/OpenDS/OpenDJ) TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM
TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM82
TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM
TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM
TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM
TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM 82 TABLE 4.2 Operating System Installation using SVIM 86 TABLE 4.3 Operating system installation with SVIM 91 TABLE 4.4 Operating system installation with SVIM 96 TABLE 4.5 Operating system installation with SVIM 102
TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM 82 TABLE 4.2 Operating System Installation using SVIM 86 TABLE 4.3 Operating system installation with SVIM 91 TABLE 4.4 Operating system installation with SVIM 96 TABLE 4.5 Operating system installation with SVIM 102 TABLE 4.6 Operating system installation by SVIM 106
TABLE 4.1 Operating system installation by SVIM .82 TABLE 4.2 Operating System Installation using SVIM .86 TABLE 4.3 Operating system installation with SVIM .91 TABLE 4.4 Operating system installation with SVIM .96 TABLE 4.5 Operating system installation with SVIM .102 TABLE 4.6 Operating system installation by SVIM .106 TABLE 4.7 Operating system installation with SVIM .110

CHAPTER 1 Installation Overview

This chapter describes the workflow up to actual operation of the PRIMEQUEST2000 series server. For an overview of the hardware and software and Product names and functions of the server, see the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series General Description* (CA92344-0534).

1.1 Setup Workflow

This section describes the workflow for the tasks required to prepare the PRIMEQUEST2000 series server for operation. Setup work consists of tasks performed by a field engineer and other tasks performed by the user.

The setup workflow is described below.

Field engineers perform the following tasks on this product.

Customers are not allowed to perform these tasks under any circumstances. Otherwise, electric shock, injury, or fire may result.

- Newly installing or moving equipment
- Removing the front, rear, and side covers
- Installing and removing built-in options
- Maintenance (repair and periodic diagnosis and maintenance)

1.1.1 Work performed by a field engineer

A field engineer sets up the unit. This includes the following tasks:

- Checking mounted components
- Preparing for main unit installation
- Checking partitions ... etc.

Remark

The following tasks need to be completed before the user starts the setup work:

- Unit setup by a field engineer
- MMB setup within the scope of responsibility of the field engineer
- Running test programs ... etc.

1.1.2 Work performed by the user

The user performs the following tasks in the order given.

TABLE 1.1 Work	performed b	y the user
----------------	-------------	------------

No.	Work item	Work tasks and description	See
1.	Setup	 Initializing partition settings Perform tasks such as setting partition names and configuring partitions individually. 	3.1.2 Partition Settings
		- Connecting and configuring the MMB	0
		(operating environment)	
		 Setting up the connection environment for actual operation. 	Setting of Connection for Actual operating Environment
		Set up the MMB connection environment, such as by setting the IP addresses for actual operation.	
		- Initializing MMB settings	3.3.10 Registration of User Account
		Set the parameters for the entire MMB, such as the	3.3.11 Setting of System Name
		user account names or system names.	3.3.12 Setting of Date and Time
		- Setting various modes	3.4.5 Various mode settings
		Set modes as needed.	
		- Starting the system and confirming system startup	3.2 System Startup
		Start the system and confirm that it has started normally.	
		- Saving setting information	3.7 Storage of the configuration
		Save the setting information for the MMB.	information
2.	Installing the OS and bundled software.	Install the operating system and bundled software.	CHAPTER 4 Installation of Operating System and bundled software
3.	Work after installation	Specify the monitoring method, and save the specified information.	CHAPTER 5 Types of work
4.	Configuring SNMP and security	Configure SNMP and security.	CHAPTER 7 Power ON and OFF of the partition

CHAPTER 2 Preparing for Main Unit Installation

This chapter describes the preparation before main unit installation. This preparation includes work up to power cable connection.

2.1 Safety Precautions

Observe the following precautions when installing the main unit.

ACAUTION

Installation of main units must follow the precautions below. Otherwise system may be damaged.

- Follow the precautions, warnings, and instructions labelled on the main unit.
- Do not block the vent holes.
- Do not install the main unit in a location exposed to direct sunlight or close to a device that may generate heat.
- Do not install the main unit in a location exposed to dust, corrosive gas, or salt spray.
- Do not install the main unit in a location subject to strong vibration. Install the main unit on a flat surface.
- Use grounded Category 3 wiring or better. Using another type of grounded wiring may cause abnormal operation.
- Do not route cables under the main unit. Do not allow cables to become taut.
- Do not disconnect the power cables while the main unit power is on.
- If it is hard to push the connector latch of a LAN cable or other cable when attempting to disconnect the cable, push it with a flathead screwdriver.

Forcibly inserting a finger may cause personal injury or damage the unit.

- Do not place anything on top of the main unit. Do not work above or on top of the main unit.
- Prevent rapid rises in the ambient temperature during winter. Such an abrupt temperature change may cause condensation to form in the main unit. Allow sufficient warm-up time before starting operation.
- Do not install the main unit close to a photocopier, air-conditioning unit, welder, or other device that generates electromagnetic noise.
- Do not install the main unit close to a device that generates large amounts of electrical noise.
- When installing the main unit, do not connect it to the power supply line for an elevator in the facility, since this would expose it to sudden voltage drops.
- Implement antistatic measures at the installation site.
- Confirm that the power supply voltage and frequency follows rating values labelled on main unit.
- Do not put any materials in the main unit. The main unit contains high-voltage components. So if metallic matter or other electro-conductive object enters the main unit through an opening, it may cause a short circuit. This may lead to fire, electric shock, or damage to the main unit.
- For details on maintenance of the main unit, contact the distributor where you purchased your product, or your sales representative.

2.2 Before Installing the Main Unit

Be sure that you understand the system configuration and have acquired all the requisite installation information before installing the main unit.

For a system overview and details on the system configuration, see the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series General Description* (CA92344-0534). For details on the installation prerequisites, see the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535).

2.3 Checking Environmental Conditions

This section describes the environmental conditions for main unit installation. The conditions of the main unit operating environment depend on the altitude of the installation site. For details on the environmental conditions of the PRIMEQUEST2000 series, see 1.3 Installation Specifications in the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535). For details on the recommended temperature and humidity of the computer room, see the *SPARC Enterprise/PRIMEQUEST Common Installation Planning Manual* (C120-H007EN).

2.4 Preparing the Power Supply Equipment

This section describes the electrical specifications, facility power requirements, and grounding for the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series. To prevent accidents, confirm that the power supply equipment can supply enough power to the system. Electricianing and installation work shall conform to local ordinances and local and national government regulations. For details on the power supply equipment, see the SPARC Enterprise/PRIMEQUEST Common Installation Planning Manual (C120-H007EN).

2.4.1 Electrical specifications

For details on the electrical specifications of the PRIMEQUEST2000 series, see 1.3 Installation Specifications in the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535).

For details on the power cables, see 2.2.1 Basic interfaces and peripheral devices in the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535).

For details on the connectors and their shapes, see 2.4.1 PRIMEQUEST2000 series main unit in the *PRIMEQUEST 2000* Series Hardware Installation Manual (CA92344-0535).

2.4.2 Facility power requirements and characteristics

To obtain the required degree of redundancy, the facility must have two independent supplies of power. Connect the circuit breakers to the power receiver provided by the electric power company or to a UPS (uninterruptible power supply). If the main unit operates in an environment that experiences frequent power failures or has a power source that often becomes unstable, the component failure rate tends to rise.

The PRIMEQUEST2000 series supports the following power feed:

- redundant power feed
- dual power feed

For details on the power line configurations for redundant power connections and dual power connections, see 2.3 Power Cable Connections in the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535).

2.4.3 Grounding

The PRIMEQUEST2000 series is shipped with grounded (three-wire) power cables. You need to connect the power cables to outlets with ground terminals. To determine the type of power supply in your building, contact the building manager or a qualified electrician.

2.5 Checking the Installation Site

Before installing the main unit, confirm that the installation site has enough space for the required service (maintenance) area and for accommodating the peripheral devices. For details on checks of the installation site, see Chapter 1 Installation Information in the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535).

2.6 Preparing to Install the Main Unit

TABLE 2.1 Accessories required in main unit installation lists the accessories required in main unit installation. Prepare these accessories in advance.

Accessory name	Description
No. 2 Phillips screwdriver	Used to mount the unit in a rack.
Wrist strap	Used to prevent main unit damage from static electrostatic
	discharged from your body.
Conductive mat	Required for some system configurations. To order any of
Ethernet Category 5 cable or better	the accessories, contact the distributor where you
Console PC-to-LAN cable (for user LAN)	purchased your product, or your sales representative.
External switching hub	Used to connect the PRIMEQUEST2000 series server to
	an external switching hub via a LAN.
Multitester	Used to check the input AC voltage.

TABLE 2.1 Accessories required in main unit installation

2.7 Confirming the Supplied Parts

Confirm that the delivered parts match the shipping list provided with the main unit. If any of the parts listed in the shipping list or performance records are missing, incorrect, or damaged, contact the distributor where you purchased your product, or your sales representative.

Note

- If you also purchased optional modules for installation, such as additional memory modules or PCI Express cards, first confirm that the main unit functions normally before mounting the optional modules in the main unit.
- License key must be kept by customer. If you apply the RAID software license, when you will exchange SAS array controller card at the reason for the failure of it, you will need to input the license key.

2.8 Mounting the Main Unit in a 19-inch Rack

The PRIMEQUEST2000 series server is mounted for use in a 19-inch rack. For details on mounting, see Appendix A Racks in the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535).

2.9 Connecting the Power Cables

This section describes how to connect the power cables. You need to connect the power cables to outlets with ground terminals.

Remark

The main unit and PCI_Box are designed to operate with a power supply facility that supports grounded wiring. Do not connect the main unit and PCI_Box to a power supply facility that does not provide grounded wiring. To determine the type of power supply in your building, contact the building manager or a qualified electrician.

Note

If PSU configuration is redundant and power cables are connected first, there is a case the Alarm LED (Amber LED) on OPL is turned on. Also, "Configuration error in excess unit" message is logged in System Event Log. This message does not indicate a failure of the power supply. Please set Power Feed Mode or PSU Redundant Mode in MMB-Web UI.

Operations

- 1. Confirm with an engineer specializing in electricity that the input power satisfies power requirements. For details on the power requirements, see 1.3 Installation Specifications in the *PRIMEQUEST2000 Series Hardware Installation Manual* (CA92344-0535).
- 2. Confirm that the power cables are connected to the AC inlets of the main unit and PCI_Box. Also confirm that the power cables are secured with the AC cord clamps for the AC inlets on the main unit.



- The cable is passed through the circle of release Thailand.

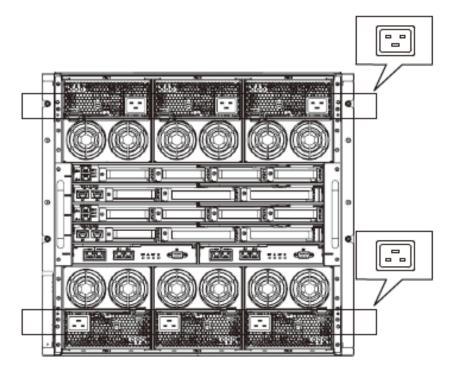
- Release tie is tightened and the power cable is fixed. The insulation connector is mistaken from the server and does not come off.

Remark

Release tie can be detached by bending it with the choke end of the zip tie.

- 3. Group all the cables that run outside the main unit and PCI_Box into power cables and signal cables, and secure them firmly to the cable holders of the 19-inch rack with cable ties.
- 4. Confirm that the AC power breaker is off. Then, connect the power cables to AC power. For details on the power cable connections, see "2.4.2Facility power requirements and characteristics".

FIGURE 2.1 Power cable socket locations (PRIMEQUEST2000 Series)



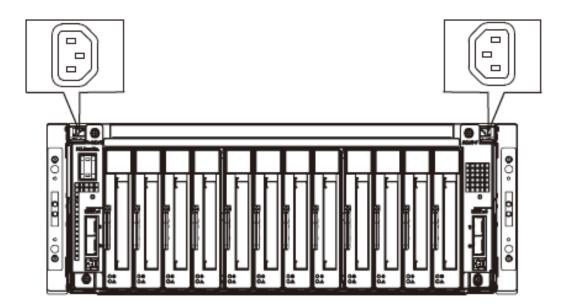


FIGURE 2.2 Power cable socket locations (PCI_Box)

CHAPTER 3 Work before Operating System Installation

This chapter describes the work that must be done before you install the operating system on the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series and setting of actual operation and various setup works.

3.1 Before Starting Setup

This section describes the items necessary to predetermine before the setup.

3.1.1 MMB Settings

It is necessary to predetermine the following items to configure MMB.

- IP address, hostname, subnet mask, and gateway address
- IP address of the PC used as the MMB console (referred to below as the MMB console PC)
- ID for MMB User Account
- PRIMEQUEST 2000 series system name (also used as the system name for SNMP)
- Management LAN environment

For details on setting of MMB, see "3.3 Connection and Setting of MMB".

Note

The management LAN, remote maintenance LAN and any other LAN must be configured as networks with different subnet masks.

3.1.2 Partition Settings

To construct multiple partitions, following items should be predetermined.

- Number of partitions
- Name of partition
- Configuration of partition
- Home SB

For details on setting of partition, see "3.4 3.4 Partition Configuration".

If partition name and host name of the operating system installed on the partition are the same, operations management of partition becomes easier.

Note

For 2400E3/2800E3/2400E2/2800E2/2400E/2800E Model

- In case PCI Address Mode is set to PCI Segment Mode, PCI ROM Priority parameter in BIOS menu must be set "EFI Compatible ROM" if RAID disk drives including HDD and SSD are to be mounted in Non Home SB.
- In case PCI Address Mode is set to PCI Segment Mode, Legacy OS installation to HDD/SSD on SB is possible only in Home SB.

- In case PCI Address Mode is set to PCI Segment Mode, Legacy OS booting from HDD/SSD on SB is possible only in Home SB.
- The above notes are the same for Extended Partition.

3.2 System Startup

Power control required to startup the system is described in this section. In case of not being turned on the main power supply of the main unit, follow the procedure described below.

3.2.1 Power-on/off of main unit

Power-on/off of main unit is described.

Power on

The procedure to turn on the main power supply of the main unit is described below.



(Ignition)

When over current is detected and the power is cut off by tripping the breaker of the AC power or optional power distribution box, there is a possibility that failure, such as short circuit occurring in the main unit. In such case, contact to your sales representative or field engineer without turning on the power supply again.

Note

- When the power supply is turned on again after removing the power cable from the AC Inlet, connect the power cable after ten seconds or more.

The procedure to turn on the main power supply of the main unit is described below.

- 1. Connect the power cable to the AC inlet of the main unit.
- For details on the power cable connection, see "2.9 Connecting the Power Cables".
- 2. Connect to AC power or optional power distribution box.
- Turn on the power supply by turning on the circuit breaker of AC power.
 After removing the power cable, follow the procedure sequentially from step 1 to turn on the power supply again.

Power off

The procedure to turn off the main power supply of the main unit is described below.

ACAUTION

(Data corruption)

Turn off the main power supply of the main unit after confirming that System Power LED of Operator Panel (OPL) is turned off. If the main power supply is turned off while the System Power LED of the OPL is ON, there is a risk of the data being corrupted.

The procedure to turn off the main power supply of the main unit is described below.

- 1. Turn off the power supply of the main unit. For details, see "7.1.2 Power OFF of the partition".
- 2. Confirm that the System Power LED of OPL is turned off.

Remark

When the System Power LED of OPL is turned on, it is in the state that power supply cannot be turned off. When Alarm LED is turned on, contact to your sales representative or field engineer.

3. Remove the power cable connected to power distribution box.

3.3 Connection and Setting of MMB

The MMB has LED display or provides view for server maintenance or administration that the field engineer constructs the environment for testing and test program is executed. Therefore, it is necessary to reconfigure MMB from test environment to actual operating environment. Skip the steps for items already set by field engineer.

After MMB connection, implement following steps by using MMB Web-UI (Web User Interface).

- User account registration
- Security setting
- Time setting

Implement following procedure of connection and setting of MMB.

Procedure	ltem	Description	Refer to
1.	Connection of MMB	Connect the MMB console PC to set up the	3.3.1 Connecting the MMB
	console PC	environment for actual operation.	console PC
2.	Initial setting of MMB	Initialize MMB settings before setting up the	3.3.1 Connecting the MMB
		connection environment for actual operation.	console PC
3.	Connection setting of	The MMB is set for a test connection. Set up the	0
	actual operating	connection environment for actual operation.	
	environment		Setting of Connection for
			Actual operating Environment
4.	Login to MMB	Log in to the MMB. There is also a description of the	3.3.4 Login to MMB
		MMB Web-UI window for reference.	3.3.5 Web-UI Window View
5.	Network setting of actual	The MMB is set for testing purposes, so configure the	3.3.6 Network set up of MMB
	operation	network and Web servers for actual operation. Make	3.3.7 Set up of telnet
		the required settings appropriate to your operation	3.3.8 Configuration of DNS
		mode.	server
			3.3.9 Set up of Alarm E-Mail
6.	Various initial settings of	Various initial settings of MMB are implemented.	3.3.10 Registration of User
	MMB	-Registration of user account.	Account
		-System name setting	3.3.11 Setting of System
		-Date/ Time setting	Name
		It is recommended to take the back up of information	3.3.12 Setting of Date and
		of the settings when the initial settings are completed.	Time
		For details on the back-up of information which is set,	
		see "3.7 Storage of the configuration information".	

TABLE 3.1 Flow of connection and setting of MMB

Since all the screenshots in this manual are examples, depending on the configuration, these may differ from the actual screen displays.

3.3.1 Connecting the MMB console PC

This section describes the connection of the MMB and MMB console PC.

There are two methods of connecting MMB with MMB console PC.

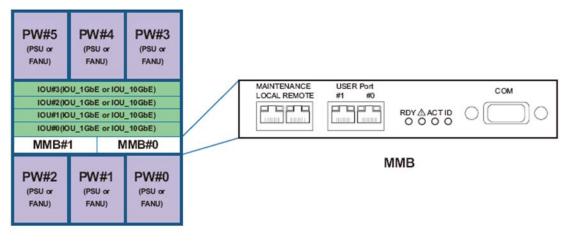
- Connect the COM port of the MMB console PC and the External interface RS232C (COM port) of the MMB with RS232C cross cable.
- Connect the LAN port of the MMB console PC and the External interface MAINTENANCE LOCAL (LAN port) of the MMB with LAN cable.

Remark

- In PRIMEQUEST2400E/2800E/2800B, only way of RS232 (COM port) can be used.
- In PRIMEQUEST2400E3/2800E3/2800B3/2400E2/2800E2/2800B2, both ways can be used.

For the mounting location and external interface overview of the MMB, refer to the figure below.

FIGURE 3.1 External Views of Mounting Locations and External interface of MMB



Rear side view

TABLE 3.2 External interface of MMB

External interface	Quantity	Remark
RS232C(COM Port)	1	Used by the field engineer when setting-up the device. It is not used in normal operations.
LAN 1000Base- T	2	User port
LAN 100Base-TX	2	Maintenance -[LOCAL] : CE Port -[REMOTE]: REMCS Port

Set the terminal software by using following contents, at the time of connecting COM port.

Setting item	Value
Bit/ second	19200
Data bit	8
Parity	No
Stop bit	1
Flow control	No
Emulation	VT100

Initial setting of MAINTENANCE LOCAL LAN port of MMB is below.

Setting item	Value	
IP Address	192.168.1.1	
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	
Gateway address	0.0.0.0	
SMTP address	0.0.0.0	
Network Protocol	Telnet	
Telnet Port#	23	
Timeout(sec)	600	

3.3.2 MMB Initialization

The procedure for the MMB initialization is described below. If field engineer initialized the MMB, it is not necessary to implement following procedure.

Operations

1. Turn on the power supply of the main unit.

 \rightarrow Alarm LED of each unit is turned on while MMB Ready LED is blinking (during initialization). After MMB Ready LED turns from blinking to lighting, the login prompt is displayed.

- 2. Once MMB Ready LED is turned on (Initialization complete), confirm that the Alarm LED of each unit has been turned off.
- 3. Login to Administration by using terminal software from MMB console PC.

 \rightarrow When you first log in, you will be asked to change the Administrator password.

4. Set the password.

Note

The password with eight more characters should be set.

Usable character codes are alphanumeric characters ([A-Z] [a-z] [0-9]) and the following symbols

! " # \$ % & ' () = . ^ ~ ¥ ` [] { } : * ; + ? < . > , / _ |

If the entered password is invalid, re-setting of the password is requested.

For the detail of setting rule of password, see 1.4[User Administration] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

5.	Then set MMB network.	
	Remark	
	When IPv4 and IPv6 are operated both IPv4 and IPv6 are set.	
	- In case of IPv4	
	Set the IP Address by using the following commands.	
	# set hostname <fqdn host="" name="" type=""></fqdn>	
	# set ip <ip address=""> <netmask></netmask></ip>	
	# set gateway <default address="" gateway="" ip=""></default>	
	# set http enable	
	Example: In case of IP Address:192.168.0.10/ netmask:255.255.255.0/ gateway:192.168.0.	.1
Admini	strator > set ip 192.168.0.10 255.255.255.0	
Admini	strator > set gateway 192.168.0.1	

- In case of IPv6

Set IP Address by using following commands.

set hostname <FQDN type host name>

set ipv6 [auto | <IP Address/Prefix>]

set gateway_ipv6 <default gateway IP Address>

set http enable

Example: In case of IP Address=2001:2345:6789::10/ Prefix=64/ gateway=2001:2345:6789::1

Administrator > set ipv6 2001:2345:6789::10/64

Administrator > set gateway_ivp6 2001:2345:6789::1

6. Enable http by set http enable command.

Web-UI of MMB can be accessed from MMB console PC through LAN.

Administrator > set http enable

Remark

Use set https command to enable https.

Administrator > set https enable

7. Enable telnet by using set telnet enable command.

Remark

Only when connecting to the CLI port, this procedure is required.

Administrator > set telnet enable

8. Set date and time as required.

Use the following commands.

Administrator> set date MMDDhhmm[[CC]YY][,ss]

Example: To set 2013/7/27 as date and 13:10:00 as time

Administrator > set date 072713102013,00

3.3.3 Setting of Connection for Actual operating Environment

According to the following operations, set the connection environment for the actual operation.

- Set IP address of MMB console PC
- Connect MMB console PC to the User port of the MMB
- Connect external LAN of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series

Setting of IP address of MMB console PC

Set the IP address of the PC used as the MMB console. See the Manual of the PC to be used for the setting method.

Connection of MMB console PC to the user interface of the MMB

Connect the MMB console PC to the user port #0 of the MMB using LAN cable. Once it is connected, communication between MMB console PC and MMB is possible via LAN.

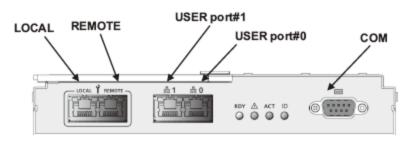


FIGURE 3.2 Location of MMB user port

Connection of External LAN of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series

Configuration of external LAN connection of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series and the notes for external LAN connection are described below. Connection to an external LAN is recommended after setting the security. For details on security, see "6.5 Set up of security".

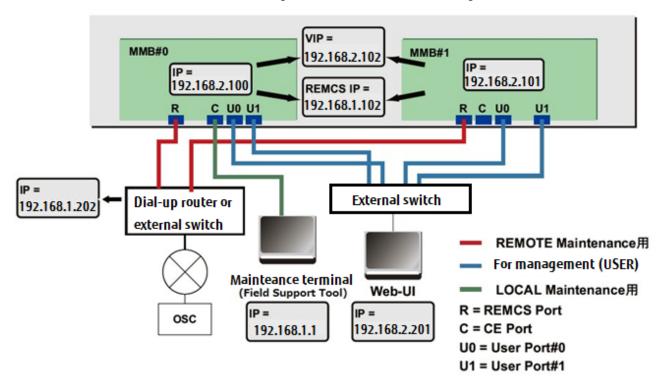


FIGURE 3.3 Network Configuration and IP Address of Management LAN

Ports for managing MMB#0 and MMB#1 are connected to the external switching hub device using a LAN cable. At the same time MMB console PC is also connected to the external switching hub device. Physical IP address and Virtual IP address of MMB#0 and MMB#1 are set in identical subnet.

- Physical IP Address (In the above figure, MMB#0=192.168.2.100, MMB#1=192.168.2.101)
- Virtual IP Address (In the above figure, 192.168.2.102)

For external connection (Web browser, Terminal for Maintenance, REMCS, etc.), communication is done by virtual IP address.

Conditions	Required settings
When using the switching hub which supports the circulatory prevention function (Spanning Tree Protocol or the domain Separation, etc.) in the external switch	Prevent circulatory prevention function to [disable] Spanning Tree Protocol of connection port of switching hub and the main unit or to set Domain Separation 'ON'.
When the data given below corresponds to any of the category- -Destination server becomes external server which is passed through the firewall. -Use a mail server which restricts the IP address.	It is necessary to set the firewall and mail server in such a way that physical IP address packets of MMB #0 and MMB#1 can pass through.
For REMCS connection	 Connection format is as given below. When connecting to internet: Connect REMCS port to the external switching hub. Or connect to the center by restricting the firewall from the external switch of the management port. When connecting to P-P Connect each REMCS port of MMB of MMB#0 and MMB#1 to the Dial-up route directly. For details on REMCS linkage, see <i>PRIMEQUEST 2000 series REMCS Service Installation Manual (CA92344-0542).</i>

TABLE 3.5 Settings required for connecting external LAN

Remark

- Packets are transmitted from MMB in "NTP", "Alarm E-Mail", and "REMCS". When both the physical IP address and the virtual IP address of MMB are set, the transmission source IP address of packet is considered as the physical IP address of the MMB.
- Physical IP address of MMB is also used in PRIMECLUSTER linkage.

3.3.4 Login to MMB

The method of login to the MMB is described below.

Login/ Logout in MMB Web-UI

The procedure of Login/Logout for MMB Web-UI is described below. Specify any of the following to login to Web-UI.

- Virtual IP Address
- Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) corresponding Virtual IP Address
- Hostname corresponding Virtual IP Address

Note

- MMB Web-UI supports the following browsers. **Note** that, if the browser other than this is used, Web UI window may not display correctly.
 - Internet Explorer 9 onwards
 - Firefox 20 onwards
- Do not multiple login by using Web-UI from one MMB console PC to PRIMEQUEST 2000 series (also includes multiple login with the same user name). If multiple login is done, the following phenomenon may occur by the types and version of a browser to be operated. Moreover, do not multiple login by using multiple tabs.
 - The operation authority of the user logged in previously with Web-UI might change to the operation authority of the user who logs in later.
 - When one Web-UI is logged out, all Web-UIs might be logged out.

Remark

To specify the FQDN, the DNS server should be set in the MMB console PC.

For details on DNS server setting, see "3.3.8 Configuration of DNS server".

• Login

1. Start the Web browser.

Remark

Enable JavaScript and download in the browser setting.

2. Enter next URL.

TABLE 3.6 URL to be entered for Login

Standard	http://nodename:adminport http://nodename:adminport/login.cgi (In case of Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2008 R2)
SSL	https://nodename:adminport
Remark	Above-mentioned nodename: adminport is described in following format. Nodename: Hostname, FQDN or IP Address of MMB. adminport: port number assigned at the management port of the MMB (Default value is 8081 and 432 in case of SSL)

Note

When an https connection is established, a warning message appears because the certificate is not one from a thirdparty organization. Ignore it and continue establishing the connection.

3. Since MMB Web-UI login window is displayed, enter user account and password and click on [Login] button.

FIGURE 3.4 MMB Web-UI [Login] Window

Username : Password : Login Cancel * Username and password are case sensitive.	FUĴĨTSU	SU FUJITSU SERVER PRIMEQUEST 2800E Management Board Web UI Version 1.54		
Copyright © 2013-2014 FUJITSU LIMITED. All Rights Reserved.		Password : Login Cancel		

Remark

At the time of initial start-up and if the settings have not been changed, following default user account and password are applicable.

TABLE 3.7 Default user account/password

Username	Administrator
Password	Password set up by the field engineer when setting a device

Logout

Click [Logout] on the Navigation Bar. -> Log out from Web-UI.

3.3.5 Web-UI Window View

For details on Web-UI window view, see "Chapter 1 Web-UI Overview" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series User Interface Operating Instructions (CA92344-0538).

Remark

When [Read Error] is displayed on Web-UI Window, confirm the contents by referring to "11.2Troubleshooting" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537). In spite of referring to the manual, if the error cannot be resolved, recurs, contact repairs inquiry counter or a sales representative.

Before making contact, confirm the model name and serial number shown on the label on the device and communicate the same.

Basic operations in MMB Web-UI

The flow of basic operations is as follows.

- 1. The Menu is selected from Navigation Bar.
 - \rightarrow The Submenu of the selected menu is displayed in the submenu area.
- The Menu is selected from the submenu.
 → The window corresponding to the selected menu is displayed in the content area.
- Information displayed on the window is confirmed and set.
 When [Apply] Button is clicked, the information is set.
 When [Cancel] Button is clicked, the information returns to the previous status.

Note

When Internet Explorer is being used, if the display of dialog box for confirmation of process execution, or the display of dialog box or for notification of process completion exceeds 2 minute or more, its connection with MMB Web-UI is cut. In this case, login again to MMB Web-UI.

3.3.6 Network set up of MMB

MMB Network is set up. For the items already set at this time, confirm the setting contents. For the items not set, make the settings.

Following IP Addresses are set..

- Virtual IP Address used to access Web-UI.
- Physical IP Address assigned to the MMB interface.

See "3.7 Storage of the configuration information" for the backup of information which is set.

Note

 Set up of MMB Physical IP Address is not required, as long as MMB is not mounted at the installation location MMB#1, and PRIMECLUSTER linkage is not performed.

- Log in to 'Administrator privileges, to set up MMB network.
- When on [Network Interface] window, if [Apply] Button is clicked after changing [MMB#0 IP Address] or [MMB#1 IP Address]:

To reflect the settings, the network is temporarily stopped, and Web-UI is cut. It is possible to connect to Web-UI again by selecting Web-UI menu.

When Virtual IP Address is changed:

Connection with MMB Web-UI is cut. Re-login is required when MMB Web-UI is to be used.

Remark

When Virtual IP Address is set up:

The Web browser has an access for the virtual IP address of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series. Therefore, the MMB Web-UI cannot be accessed by specifying the physical IP address of MMB#0, and MMB#1.

Terminal for maintenance and REMCS can access as against the IP address set in [Maintenance IP Address] of [Network Configuration]-[Network Interface].

Operations

- 1. Click [Network Configuration]-[Network Interface].
 - -> [Network Interface] screen is displayed. For details on [Network Interface] screen, see
 - '1.5.2[Network Interface] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.5 Example of [IPv4 Interface] Window

System Partition User Administration N	etwork Configuration Mai	ntenance	Logout
>Network Configuration >Network Interfac			20500
Date/Time			
Date Time Network Interface	IPv4 Interface		Help
IPv4 Interface			
IPv6 Interface	Click the Apply button fo	or all changes to take effect.	,
Management LAN Port Configuration	Cache and Frippiny builden in		
Network Protocols	MMB Virtual/Physica	I IP Address	
Refresh Rate	Virtual IP Address		
SNMP Configuration	Hostname	PRIMEQUEST	
SSL	IP Address		
SSH Remote Server Management			
Access Control	Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 255 . 0	
Access Control	Gateway address	xx , xx , xxx , 1	
- 1 Martin 17 1910	MMB#0 IP Addres	s	
	Interface	⊖Enable	
	Hostname (optional)		
	IP Address	0 0 0 0	
	Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 255 . 255	
	Gateway address	0.0.0.0	
	DNS (optional)		
	DNS	○Enable	
	DNS Server 1	0 0 0 0	
	DNS Server 2	0.0.0.0	
	DNS Server 3	0.0.0.	
	Management LAN		
	Dualization	⊖Enable ● Disable	
	Maintenance IP Addre		
	Interface	● Enable ○ Disable	
	IP Address	192 . 168 . 1 . 1	
	Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 255 . 0	
	Gateway address		
	SMTP address		
	T1 TD4 11		
	Internal IP Address Interface	⊖Enable ● Disable	
	IP Address	172.30.0.1	
	Subnet Mask	255 . 255 . 255 . 0	
		Apply Cancel	

System Partition User Administration Net			T. court
>Network Configuration >Network Interface	>IPv6 Interface	enance	Logout V
Date/Time			
Network Interface	IPv6 Interface		Help
IPv4 Interface			
IPv6 Interface	Click the Apply button for	all changes to take effect.	^
Management LAN Port Configuration			
 Network Protocols Refresh Rate 	MMB Virtual/Physical	IP Address	_
 Refresh Rate SNMP Configuration 	Virtual IP Address		
SINIP Comparation SSL	Hostname	PRIMEQUEST	×
■ SSH	Automatic Acquisition	Auto	
Remote Server Management	IP Address		
Access Control	Prefix Length	0	-
Alarm E-Mail	-		-
	Gateway address MMB#0 IP Address	α	_
			_
	Interface	⊖Enable	_
	Hostname (optional)		_
	Automatic Acquisition	Auto	_
	IP Address	88 30	
	Prefix Length	0	
	Gateway address		
	DNS (optional)		
	DNS	⊖Enable ● Disable	
	DNS Server 1	14 14	
	DNS Server 2	::	
	DNS Server 3		
	Management LAN		
	Dualization	○ Enable	
	Maintenance IP Addres	2	
		CEnable Disable	
	IP Address		-
	Prefix Length	0	-
	Gateway address		1
	SMTP address		
			¥
		Apply Canc	el

FIGURE 3.6 Example of [IPv6 Interface] Window

- The values are entered in [IP Address], [Subnet Mask] (¹) of [Virtual IP Address]. Host name is also set up.
 ¹: [Prefix Length] is entered at the time of [IPv6]. [Gateway address] is also entered at the time of [Gateway address].
- 3. Each item is entered by clicking [Enable] for [Interface] in [MMB#0 IP Address] or [MMB#1 IP Address]. Here specifies the assigned Physical IP Address.
- 4. [Apply] button is clicked when the required items are set up.

Notes

If an incorrect value of IP Address is set MMB Web-UI is not displayed. In that case, the correct value is set by connecting MMB console PC to the MMB COM port.

Remark

The Physical IP Address and the Virtual IP Address of MMB#0, and MMB#1 are set up in the same subnet.

3.3.7 Set up of telnet

MMB telnet is set up.

See "3.7 Storage of the configuration information" for the backup of set up information.

The following condition must be satisfied in advance when field engineers perform the Maintenance tasks on this product.

- Video Redirection and Virtual Media are available.

For details on how to setup the procedure, see Chapter 1.3.3 [Console Redirection Setup] window in the PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

- SSH or Telnet is available.

For details on how to setup the procedure, see Chapter 1.5.4 [Network Protocols] window in the PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Note

To set up telnet, log in to Administrator privileges.

Operations

1. Click [Network Configuration]-[Network Protocols].

-> [Network Protocols] window is displayed. For details on [Network Protocols] window, see "1.5.4[Network Protocols] Window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

System Partition User Administrat	tion Network Configuration Maintenance Protocols		Logout
Date/Time Network Interface Management LAN Port Configur Network Protocols Refresh Rate	Network Protocols Click the Apply Button to apply all changes.		Нер
 SNMP Configuration SSL SSH Remote Server Management 	Web (HTTP/HTTPS) HTTP HTTP Port#[80,1024-65535]	Enable Obiable	
■ Access Control ■ Alarm E-Mail	HTTPS HTTPS Port#[432,443,1024-65535] TLS1.0/1.1		
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999] Telnet Telnet Telnet Tehet TehetPort#[23,1024-65535]	600 €mable ○ Disable 23	
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	600	
	SSH SSH Port#[22,1024-65535] Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	● Enable ○Disable [22] [600]	
	SNMP SNMP Agent Agent Port#[161,1024-65535] SNMP Trap Trap Port#[162,1024-65535]	Enable Obsable 161 Enable Obsable 162	
		Apply Cancel	~

2. Items of [Telnet] are set.

Note

MMB uses the following fixed port number of TCP/IP. Do not change the following port numbers.

- 623/udp: For RMCP communication
- 664/udp: For RMCP communication
- 3. Click [Apply] button.

3.3.8 Configuration of DNS server

Only when using a DNS server, set up DNS server.

For the backup of set up information, see "3.7 Storage of the configuration information".

Note

Log in to Administrator privileges to set up the above-mentioned items.

Operations

1. Click [Network Configuration]-[Network Interface]. Select [IPv4 Interface] or [IPv6 Interface].

-> [IPv4 Interface] or [IPv6 Interface] window is displayed. For details on [IPv4 Interface] or [IPv6 Interface] window, see "1.5.2 [Network Interface] Menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

IPv4 Interface Click the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Management LAN Port Configuration Click the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Network Protocols MMB Virtual/Physical IP Address SNMP Configuration Virtual IP Address SSL IP Address SSH IP Address SSH IP Address SSH Subnet Mask Subnet Mask 255	
Date Time IPv4 Interface IPv4 Interface I IPv6 Interface Click the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Management LAN Port Configuration Click the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Management LAN Port Configuration NMB Virtual/Physical IP Address NB Virtual P Address Virtual IP Address SSNM PRIMEQUEST IP Address Ix, joox, joox, joox SSH Subnet Mask	<u> </u>
Network Interface IPv4 Interface IPv4 Interface Cick the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Management LAN Port Configuration Cick the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Network Protocols MMB Virtual/Physical IP Address SNMP Configuration Network Protocols SSL Hostame SSH IP Address Remote Server Management Subnet Mask Subnet Mask 255	
IPv4 Interface Cick the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Management LAN Port Configuration Cick the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Network Protocols MMB Virtual/Physical IP Address SNMP Configuration Vartual IP Address SSL IP Address SSL IP Address SSL IP Address SSL SSL SSH Subnet Mask Subnet Mask 255	lelp
IPv6 Interface Click the Apply button for all changes to take effect. Management LAN Port Configuration MMB Virtual/Physical IP Address Network Protocols MMB Virtual/Physical IP Address SNMP Configuration Virtual IP Address SSL Ip Address SSH IP Address Remote Server Management Subnet Mask	
Maagement LAN Port Configuration MMB Virtual/Physical IP Address Network Protocols MMB Virtual/Physical IP Address SNMP Configuration Virtual IP Address SSL Hostname SSH IP Address SSH IP Address State Social State State Social State Subnet Mask 255 255 255	~
Refresh Rate Virtual IP Address SNMP Configuration Hostname SSL IP Address SSH IP Address Remote Server Management Subnet Mask 255 255	- 11
SNMP Configuration Folder in Frieddom SSL Hostmane PRIMEQUEST SSH IP Address ixxjooxjjooxjooxjooxjooxjooxjooxjooxjooxjooxjoox	- 11
SSL IP Address IXX .box .box SSH Subnet Mask 255 .255 .0	- 18
IP Address IXX .pxx .pxx Remote Server Management Subnet Mask 255 .255 .0	- 11
Remote Server Management Subnet Mask [255], [255], [25], [0	- 11
	- 11
Access Control Gateway address xx, jxx, jxx, jxx, 1	- 11
Alarm E-Mail MMB#0 IP Address	- 11
Interface O Enable O Disable	
Hostname (optional)	- 11
IP Address 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	- 11
Subnet Mask 255 . 255 . 255 . 255	- 11
Gateway address 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	- 11
DNS (optional)	- 11
DNS O Enable O Disable	- 11
DNS Server 1 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	- 11
DNS Server 2 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	- 11
DNS Server 3 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	- 11
Management LAN	- 11
Dualization O Enable	- 11
Maintenance IP Address	- 11
Interface	
IP Address 192 . 166 . 1 . 1	
Submet Mask 255 255 255 0	- 11
Gateway address 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	- 11
SMTP address 0 . 0 . 0 . 0	- 11
Internal IP Address Interface C Enable Disable	
IP Address 172 30 0 1	
Subnet Mask 255 255 0	
A DATA A A DATA A DA	
Apply Cancel	\sim

FIGURE 3.8 Example of [IPv4 Interface] Window

System Partition User Administration Ne		enance	Logout 🤍
>Network Configuration >Network Interface	e >IPv6 interface		
Date/Time	IPv6 Interface		Help
 Network Interface IPv4 Interface 	IPvo interiace		THEFT
□ IPv4 Interface	Cit 1 de Annie Indere Con	** • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
Management LAN Port Configuration	Click the Apply button for	all changes to take effect.	
Network Protocols	MMB Virtual/Physical l	P Address	
Refresh Rate	Virtual IP Address		
SNMP Configuration	Hostname	PRIMEQUEST ×	
+ SSL + SSH	Automatic Acquisition	Auto	
Remote Server Management	IP Address		
Access Control		0	
Alarm E-Mail	Prefix Length		
	Gateway address		
	MMB#0 IP Address		
	Interface	○ Enable	
	Hostname (optional)		
	Automatic Acquisition	Auto	
	IP Address		
	Prefix Length	0	
	Gateway address	NK	
	DNS (optional)		
	DNS	○ Enable	
	DNS Server 1	se	
	DNS Server 2		
	DNS Server 3	···	
	Management LAN	- 54 	
	Dualization	○Enable	
			1
	Maintenance IP Addres		
	Interface	CEnable Disable	
	IP Address		
	Prefix Length	0	
	Gateway address		
	SMTP address		
			×
		Apply Cancel	^

FIGURE 3.9 Example of [IPv6 Interface] Window

- 2. Click [Enable] of [DNS] in [DNS (optional)], then each item is entered.
- 3. Click [Apply] button after setting the required items.

3.3.9 Set up of Alarm E-Mail

Set up the following for Alarm E-Mail.

- Whether to notify through E-Mail, when an error occurs during operation.
- Error level and notification destination at the time of notifying.

For the backup of the set up information, see "3.7 Storage of the configuration information".

Note

To set up the above mentioned items, log in to Administrator privileges.

Operations

1. Click [Network Configuration]-[Alarm E-Mail].

-> [Alarm E-Mail] window is displayed. For details on [Alarm E-Mail] Window, see "1.5.11 [Alarm E-Mail] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

System Partition User Administ			nfiguration Maintenance	Logout 🗸
>Network Configuration >Alarm I	E-Ma	ป		
Date/Time			z	
Network Interface	Α	larm E-N	lail	Help
IPv4 Interface				
IPv6 Interface	Clic	k the Apply Bu	tton to apply all changes.	
Management LAN Port Config	_			
Network Protocols		Alarm E-Mail	● Enable ○ Disable	
Refresh Rate				
SNMP Configuration		From:	Use envelope "from" address	
± SSL				
SSH		To:	John@smth.com	
Remote Server Management		SMTP Server	XXX.XXX.XXX	
Access Control		Subject	test alarm	
Alarm E-Mail	L		1	
			Apply Cancel Filter Test E-Mail	^
L				

2. Enter required items.

Remark

When transmitting [Alarm E-Mail], [From] address to be transmitted to SMTP server is as follows.

- When [Use envelope "from" address] checkbox is on
 The address set up in [From] of [Alarm E-Mail] window becomes [From] address to be transmitted to SMTP server.
- When [Use envelope "from" address] checkbox is off (initial set up)
 Following [From] address is transmitted to SMTP server according to the format of [Hostname], set up in [Virtual IP Address]-[Hostname] in [Network Configuration]-[Network Interface] window.
- In FQDN format: root@[Hostname]
- Except in FQDN format: <u>root@localdomain.localdomain</u>
 Mail address set up in [From], is used as [From] address of the mail to be transmitted to mail receiver ([To]).

- When FQDN is specified in SMTP Server name, DNS Server needs to be set up. DNS Server can be set up from [Network Configuration]-[Network Interface].
- 3. The operation button is clicked depending upon the purpose.
 - When the condition for transmission of mail is set up: [Filter] Button
 - When the settings are to be enabled: [Apply] Button
 - During Test transmission: [Test E-Mail] Button

Setting the conditions for transmission of mail

1. To set the conditions for transmitting the mail, click [Filter] button on [Alarm E-Mail] window.

FIGURE 3.11 Example of [Alarm E-Mail Filtering Condition] Window

System Partition User Administ >Network Configuration >Alarm I		Configuration M	laintenance				Logout 🗸
 Date/Time Network Interface IPv4 Interface IPv6 Interface Management LAN Port Config 	Select the filteri		click the Apply B				Help
Network Protocols	1)Severity:	✓ Error ✓ Wa	rning 🗹 Info				
 Refresh Rate SNMP Configuration 	2)Partition:	● All					
SSL SSH	3)Unit:	○ Specified ● All	✓ 0 ✓ 1 ✓ 2	✓ 3			
Access Control Alarm E-Mail	4)Source:	 Specified All 	 ✓ PSUs ✓ SB#0 ✓ IOU#0 ✓ DU#0 ✓ OPL ✓ MMB#0 ✓ PCI_Box#0 	 ✓ Fans ✓ SB#1 ✓ IOU#1 ✓ DU#1 ✓ MMB#1 ✓ PCI_Box#1 	✓ SB#2 ✓ IOU#2	✓ SB#3 ✓ IOU#3 ✓ PCI_Box#3	
	4).50urce.	© Specified	✓ CPU✓ Voltage	✓ DIMM ✓ Temperature	 ✓ Chipset ✓ Other 		^
				Apply C			

- 1. Select required items. When multiple items are selected, each item is AND condition, when multiple options are selected in each item, it is OR condition.
- 2. Click [Apply] Button.

3.3.10 Registration of User Account

As an initial set up, user accounts of the required number are registered. The number of maximum registration is 16. Refer "3.7 Storage of the configuration information" for the backup of set up information.

Operations

1. Click [User Administration] [User List].

-> [User List] window is displayed. For details on [User List] window, see "1.4.1[User List] Window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539)

FIGURE 3.12 Example of [User List] Window

System Partition User Administ >User Administration >User List	tration <u>Network Configuration</u>	on Maintenance				Logout 🗸
 User List Change Password Who 	User List Click the Add User butto Select a user, then click	on to add a new user. the Edit/Remove User button to	edit or remo	ove the user.		Help
	User Name	Full Name	Privilege	Status	Operable Partition (for Partition Operator)	
	OAdministrator	Default Administrator	Admin	Enabled		
		Add User Edit User	Remove U	ser Cance	le	2

2. Click [Add User] button.

-> [Add User] window is displayed. For details on [Add User] window, see "■[Add User] Window" of "1.4.1[User List] Window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

System Partition User Adminis >User Administration >User List	tration <u>Network Configuration</u> <u>Ma</u> >Add User	aintenance	Logout
 User List Change Password Who 	Add User Click the Apply Button to appl	y all changes.	Help
	User Name		
	Password		
	Confirm Password		
	Privilege	●Admin ○Operator ○User ○CE ○Partition Operator	
	Status	• Enabled	
	Full Name	(optional)	
	Operable Partition (for Partition Operator)	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	
		Apply Cancel	C

FIGURE 3.13 Example of [Add User] Window

Remark

In case of changing the user count, click the [Edit User] button on the [User List] and change the recorded contents on the [Edit User] window. For details of [Edit User] Window, see "
[Edit User] Window" of "1.4.1 [User List] Window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.14 Example of [Edit User] Window

System Partition User Administ >User Administration >User List >	ration <u>Network Configuration</u> <u>Ma</u> >Edit User	intenance	Logout
 User List Change Password Who 	Edit User		Help
	Click the Apply Button to apply	/ all changes. Administrator	
	Current Password	Administrator	
	Password	I	
	Confirm Password		
	Privilege	●Admin ○Operator ○User ○CE ○Partition Operator	
	Status	● Enabled ○ Disabled	
	Full Name	Default Administrator (op	otional)
	Operable Partition (for Partition Operator)	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	
		Arely Correct	
		Apply Cancel	0
3. Input the r	equired items.		

4. Click [Apply] button.

3.3.11 Setting of System Name

Sets the name for system of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series. This name is used as SNMP [System Name]. For the backup of the set information, see"3.7 Storage of the configuration information".

Operations

1. Click [System] - [System Information]

-> [System Information] window is displayed.

For details on [System Information] window, see "1.2.5 [System Information] Window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.15 [System Information] Window Example

System Partition User Add >System >System Information		onfiguration <u>Maintenance</u> <u>Logout</u>	~
 System Status System Event Log Operation Log Partition Event Log System Information 	System Infor	mation Help	
Firmware Information	System Name	PRIMEQUEST	
System Setup	Product Name	PRIMEQUEST 2800E2	
 System Power Control LEDs 	Part Number	MCXXXXXX	
□ LEDs□ Power Supply	Serial Number	γγγγγγγγγ	
□ Fans	Asset Tag		
 Temperature SB IOU OPL MMB 		Apply Cancel	

- 2. Enter [System Name].
- 3. Click [Apply] button.

3.3.12 Setting of Date and Time

The date, time and NTP (In case of NTP server) of the MMB is set

However, occasionally it is already set by the field engineer. If it is already set by the field engineer and if it is not required to be changed, go to the next setting.

For the backup of the set information, see"3.7 Storage of the configuration information".

Remark

MMB provides NTP client function. The NTP client function of MMB adjusts the time on the basis of another NTP Server. For a stable NTP operation, specify multiple NTP Servers from each NTP client (In case of RHEL more than three servers are recommended).

Operations of [Date/ Time] window

 Click [Network Configuration] - [Date/Time].
 -> [Date /Time] window is displayed. For details on [Date /Time] window, see "1.5.1 [Date/Time] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.16 [Date/ Time] Window Example

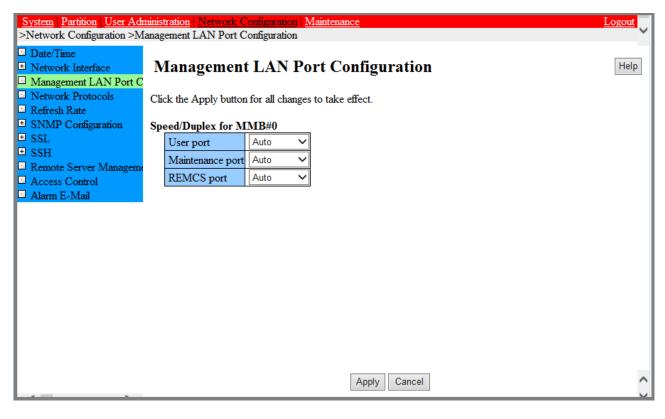
	ninistration Network Configura	tion Maintenance	Logout
>Network Configuration >Da	ite/Time		*
 Date/Time Network Interface Management LAN Port C Network Protocols Refresh Rate 	Date/Time Click the Apply Button to app	ly all changes.	Refresh Help
SNMP Configuration	Date	2013 - 4 - 16	
 SSL SSH ☑ Remote Server Manageme 	Time	☐ Modify the Time 9 : 53 : 26	
Access Control	Time zone	Asia 🗸 / Tokyo 🗸	
Alarm E-Mail	NTP	⊖Enable ● Disable	
	NTP Time Correction Mo	de Step Slew	
	NTP Server1		
	NTP Server2		
	NTP Server3		
	Current Sync Status		
		Apply Cancel	•
L		Appiy Cancer	

- 2. Input required items.
- 3. Click [Apply] Button.

Operations of [Management LAN Port Configuration]

Click [Network Configuration] - [Management LAN Port Configuration].
 -> [Management LAN Port Configuration] window is displayed. For details of [Management LAN Port Configuration] window, see "1.5.3 [Management LAN Port Configuration] window' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.17 [Management LAN Port Configuration] Windows Example



- 2. Enter required items.
- 3. Click [Apply] Button.

3.4 Partition Configuration (Physical Partition)

This section describes partition configuration. PRIMEQUEST 2400E3, 2800E3, 2400E2, 2800E2, 2400E and 2800E are available for these functions. Power off, power on for every partition is required to reflect the configuration change of partition. All screenshots are display examples. The displayed contents differ according to the system configuration.

3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration

This section describes addition and removal of operations of SB/Memory Scale-up Board and IOU.

Adding of SB/Memory Scale-up Board/IOU

SB/Memory Scale-up Board and IOU can be added to the partition.

Operations

1. Click [Partition] - [Partition Configuration]

-> [Partition Configuration] window is displayed. For details of [Partition Configuration] window, see "1.3.4 Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.18 [Partition Configuration] Window Example (PRIMEQUEST 2800E3/2800E2/2800E)

System Partition User Admir >Partition >Partition Configurat	ution <u>Netv</u>	vork Configuration <u>Ma</u>	aintenance															Lo	ogout	~
 Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Partition#1 Extended Partitic 		n Configurati		Set	Part	itio	n Na	ame,	or	Hon	ne bu	tton	s to	cor	ıfigur	re th	e partit	ion.	Help]
Extended Socket Configurat	#	Partition Name	Power Status		S	B]	IOU	ſ	Exte			artit	ionin	ıg				
Reserved SB Configuration	#	Paruuon Name	Power Status	<u>0</u>	1	2	<u>3</u>	0	1 2	3	4 5	6	7 8	89	0 10	11				
 Power Management Setup Partition#0 	0	free	Standby	H				•			•									
	01	free	On		Н			•	•			•	•	╈						
Partition#2	02	free	Standby	\vdash		н						\square								
Partition#3				+				+	+			+	+	+		-				
Partition#6	○3	free	Standby			_	Η		_	•				-	•	•				
Partition#7	Reserved													_						
	Free																			
	Note) R	represents Reserved S	В																	
	H	represents Home SB																		
	•	represents Installed SB	/IOU/Extended	1 Pa	rtitio	onir	ig of	ther	than	the	abov	<i>r</i> e								
																				_
		Set Partition	Name A	dd I	Jnit		Re	emov	/e U	nit	Ho	ome	(Can	cel					^
																				V

- Click the radio button of partition where SB/Memory Scale-up Board or IOU need to be added to. Memory Scale-up Board is shown as "SB" in [Partition Configuration] window.
- 3. Click [Add Unit] Button.

-> [Add SB/IOU to Partition] window is displayed. Free SB/Memory Scale-up Board and IOU are displayed in the list.

For details of [Add SB/IOU to Partition] window, see "■ [Add SB/IOU to Partition] window] of "1.3.4 [Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Extended Socket Configuration		ioning to ad	d to the partition #0, then click the Apply Button.	ŀ
Reserved SB Configuration	Free SB/IOU/Extended Partitioning	Status	Note	
ower Management Setup artition#0	○ SB#1	OK	Number of CPUs = 2, Memory = 64 GB	
Partition#1	○ SB#2	OK	Number of CPUs = 2, Memory = 64 GB	
	○ SB#3	OK	Number of CPUs = 2, Memory = 64 GB	
	◯IOU#0	OK	Number of PCI-Express Slots = 4	
	O Extended Partitioning#4	OK		
	O Extended Partitioning#5	OK		
	O Extended Partitioning#6	OK		
	O Extended Partitioning#7	OK		
	O Extended Partitioning#8	OK		
	O Extended Partitioning#9	ОК		
	O Extended Partitioning#10	ОК		
	O Extended Partitioning#11	OK		

FIGURE 3.19 Example of [Add SB/IOU to Partition] Window

- 4. Click the radio button of one SB/Memory Scale-up Board or one IOU to add it to the partition.
- 5. Only one SB/Memory Scale-up Board or one IOU can be selected by one operation.
- 6. Click the [Apply] button.

-> Confirmation dialogue box is displayed.

7. Click [OK] button.

-> The selected one SB/Memory Scale-up Board or one IOU is added to the partition.

Repeat procedure 2~6 until you have added all the required SBs/Memory Scale-up Boards or IOUs.

Removing of SB/Memory Scale-up Board and IOU

This section describes the method of removing the SB/Memory Scale-up Board or IOU from the partition.

Remark

You cannot remove an SB/Memory Scale-up Board or IOU while the operating system on the target partition is running. Remove the SB/Memory Scale-up Board or IOU while the partition is in the POWER OFF status.

Operations

1. Click [Partition] - [Partition Configuration]

-> [Partition Configuration] window is displayed. For details of [Partition Configuration] window, see "1.3.4 Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.20 [Partition Configuration] Window Example

System Partition User Admir >Partition >Partition Configurat		<u>n</u> Netw	vork Configuration Ma	intenance									Logout 🗸
Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Select a partition, then click the Add/Remove Unit, Set Partition Name, or Home buttons to configure the partition. Select a partition, then click the Add/Remove Unit, Set Partition Name, or Home buttons to configure the partition. Select a partition Setup Select a partition Setup Select a partition Setup Select a partition Name, or Home buttons to configure the partition.												Help	
Power Management Setup		#	Partition Name	Power Status		S	В			IO	U		
Partition#0		#	Paruuon Ivane	Power Status	<u>0</u>	1	2	<u>3</u>	<u>0</u>	1	<u>2</u> <u>3</u>		
		00	free	Standby	н				•				
■ Partition#2 ■ Partition#3		01	free_	On		Н				•			
		02	free	Standby			н				•		
		03	free	Standby				н		╈	•		
	R	eserved		-									
		Free											
	Ν	· · ·	represents Reserved SE	3									
			represents Home SB										
		• 1	represents Installed SB/	IOU/Extended	Pa	rtitio	onin	g o	ther	tha	in the	above	
			Set Partition	Name A	ld l	Jnit		R	emo	ve l	Jnit	Home Cancel	~
< >													~

- Click the radio button of the partition number from which the SB/Memory Scale-up Board /IOU has to be removed. Memory Scale-up Board is shown as "SB" in [Partition Configuration] window.
- 3. Click the [Remove Unit] button.

→[Remove SB/IOU from Partition] window is displayed. SB/Memory Scale-up Board and IOU are displayed in the list. The SB/Memory Scale-up Board and IOU are incorporated in the partition that is selected by procedure 2. For details of [Remove SB/IOU from Partition] window, see "■[[Remove SB/IOU from Partition] window] of "1.3.4 [Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

System Partition User Administ >Partition >Partition Configuration	tration Network Config	uration Mainter	1000	Logout
Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Reserved SB Configuration	Remove SB Select an SB or 101	Help		
Partition#0	SB/IOU	Status	Note	
Partition#1	O SB#0	OK	Number of CPUs = 2, Memory = Unknown	
	OIOU#3	OK	Number of PCI-Express Slots = 2	
<)	>		(Apply) Cancel	

FIGURE 3.21 Example of [Remove SB/IOU from Partition] Window

- Click the radio button of one SB/Memory Scale-up Board or one IOU which is to be removed from the partition.
 → Only one SB/Memory Scale-up Board or one IOU can be selected by one operation.
- 5. Click the [Apply] button.

-> A confirmation dialogue box is displayed.

6. Click [OK] button.

->The selected one SB/Memory Scale-up Board or one IOU is removed from the partition and is free.

3.4.2 Setting the Home SB

One SB in each partition is set as the Home SB. The SB that is initially added in every partition is automatically set as Home SB.

Moreover when Home SB is removed, the SB having the smallest number among the SB that configures the partition and which is not degraded is automatically set as Home SB. In Home SB, the USB port and the VGA port can be used as external connectors. When the Home SB has to be changed, it is specified by Web-UI. For details of Home SB, see "5.9 Home SB" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series General Description (CA92344-0534).

Remark

The Windows license needs to be verified depending on the integration of the SB and the enable kit. For details, see "■ License verification based on the integration of SB and enabling kit" of "3.4 component expansion" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

Memory Scale-up Board cannot be Home SB.

Operations

1. Click [Partition] - [Partition Configuration] - [Home]

-> [Partition Home] window is displayed. For details of [Partition Home] window, see "•[Partition Home] window" of "1.3.4 [Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539) Remark

If there is more than one partition, select the partition by checking to radio button in [Partition Configuration] window.

2. Selecting an SB as the Home SB for the partition.

FIGURE 3.22 Example of [Partition Home] Window

System Partition User Admi >Partition >Partition Configurat	nistration <u>Network Configuration</u> tion	<u>Maintenance</u>		Logout 🗸
 Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Extended Socket Configura 	Partition Home Select a Home SB for the partition	n #0, then click the Ap	pply Button.	Help
Reserved SB Configuration	Home SB			
Power Management Setup	SB	Status		
 Partition#0 Partition#1 	● SB#0	ОК		
		Арр	ly Cancel	<u>^</u>

3. Click the radio button for the selected Home SB.

Remark

As long as SB is set as Home SB it is grayed out, even if it is not mounted. The radio button in the row which is shown grayed out can be changed to the radio button on the row which is not grayed out. Once the radio button is not grayed out, the original radio button cannot be selected again.

4. Click [Apply] button.

-> A confirmation dialogue box is displayed.

Note.

At the time of clicking the [Apply] button, if the power supply for the partition has been turned on, Home cannot be changed. A warning dialogue box is displayed.

- 5. Click [OK] button to continue the process, click [Cancel] button to cancel the process.
 - →Returns to [Partition Configuration] window.

3.4.3 Setting of Reserved SB

If hardware failure occurs in the SB which is added in the partition and it may be necessary to remove the SB. Reserved SB is an SB which is newly added in the partition instead of removal of SB.

To configure Reserved SB in partition, following points should be considered. SB which is not added in the specified partition can be defined as Reserved SB.

The following SB is not added in the partition.

- SB in free status
- SB added in other partitions
- SB defined in Reserved SB of other partitions

For details of Reserved SB, see "3.2.3 Reserved SB" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

Remark

Flexible I/O mode configuration is required to implement the Reserved SB.

Windows license verification is required depending on the combination of SB and enables kit. For details "■Activation depending on the combination of SB and enable kit" of "3.4 Component extension" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

Operations

1. Click [Partition]-[Reserved SB Configuration]

→ [Reserved SB Configuration] window is displayed. Check box is displayed vertically in the free status SB column or the column of SB which is defined as Reserved SB. For details of [Reserved SB Configuration] window, see "1.3.7 [Reserved SB Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.23 Example of [Reserved SB Configuration] Window

System Partition User Adminis >Partition >Reserved SB Configu			rk Configuration	Mainter	<u>iance</u>						Logout
 Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Reserved SB Configuration 			ed SB Con	0		Rese	rved	SB, ti	hen cl	ick the Apply button.	Help
 Power Management Setup Partition#0 		#	Partition Name	Power Status	Mirror Mode (setting)	SB 0	1	2	3		
Partition#1	ľ	0	free	Standby	Disable	٠					
Partition#2	F	1	free	Standby	Disable		•				
		2	free	Standby	Disable			•			
	ľ	3	okamoto	Standby	Disable				•		
		Reserved									
		Free									
						Ар	ply	Cano	cel		\sim

2. Check the checkbox of the partition to be reserved in SB column.

3. Click [Apply] button.

Remark

Uncheck the checkbox on [Reserved SB Configuration] window to free the reserved SB.

Reserved SB configuration conditions

Reserved SB has following conditions.

- Memory Scale-up Board cannot set as Reserved SB of SB/Memory Scale-up Board.
- SB cannot set as Reserved SB of Memory Scale-up Board.
- Reserved SB can set to the partition including Memory Scale-up Board. In that case, the reserved SB works as SB in the partition, but it does not work as Memory Scale-up Board in the partition.
- An SB installed with 32GB DIMM cannot be configured as Reserved SB of the partition, which is configured on the SB installed with memory having various capacities (8GB, 16GB, 64GB, 128GB DIMM).
- An SB with 64GB DIMM cannot be configured as a Reserved SB of the partition which is configured on the SB installed with memory having various capacities (8GB, 16GB, 32GB, 128GB DIMM).
- An SB with 128GB DIMM cannot be configured as a Reserved SB of the partition which is configured on the SB installed with memory having various capacities (8GB, 16GB, 32GB, 64GB DIMM).
- Reserved SB cannot be configured in the partition that uses TPM functions.
 If the above mentioned mounting conditions are not fulfilled, a message dialogue box of "Unable to register the specified SB#x as a Reserved SB due to the home SB is TPM enabled." would be displayed and the Reserved SB configuration would be prevented.

Memory Operation Mode may be changed after switch over of faulty SB to Reserved SB if:

- Reserved SB is configured for partition of one SB, and
- The Reserved SB does not fulfill requirements for Memory Operation Mode

In that case, a confirmation dialogue box of "The DIMM does not satisfy requirements of the Mirror Mode. If you register the specified SB as a Reserved SB, the Mirror Mode will be disabled when switching to specified SB. Are you sure to continue?[Y/N]" would be displayed when configuring the Reserved SB. Reserved SB for partition of multiple SB must follows conditions below. This is applicable for PRIMEQUEST 2800E3/2800E2/2800E.

- Mount two CPUs for Reserved SB of the partition.
- Reserved SB fulfills Memory Operation Mode requirements same as switching source partition.
- Mount the same type of CPU with the SB that configures partition for Reserved SB.

If the above mounting conditions are not fulfilled, a message dialogue box of "Unable to register the specified SB#x as a Reserved SB because the DIMM does not satisfy requirements of Mirror Mode." is displayed and Reserved SB configuration would be prevented.

Points to be considered for Windows

When switching to Reserved SB in the partition operating on Windows, Windows operating system is not activated at the time of initial start-up after switching to Reserved SB.

Configure the Reserved SB in partition operated by Windows so that Windows can be configured automatically. For configuration details, see "11.4.3 Settings of Dump environment (Windows)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537). Turn on the [Start-up automatically] check box of [Start-up and recover] dialogue box.

Consider the time required for reactivation, when the operation is stopped during SB failure resulting from the above mentioned reasons.

Total two times are required for reactivation at the time of initial start-up and switching to Reserved SB.

However, if below mentioned prevention procedure is executed, reactivation request can be controlled.

Windows re-start prevention procedure

The request of reactivation can be controlled by recognizing Reserved SB to the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series in advance. Execute the following procedures for all Windows partitions.

If this prevention procedure is executed, reactivation is not demanded, when switched to Reserved SB due to SB failure.

- 1. Shut down the partition after completing Windows installation.
- 2. One SB is removed from the partition by using MMB Web-UI. When multiple SBs are installed, any one out of them can be removed.
- Add SB for Reserved SB to the partition.
 For details, see "Built in SB and IOU" of "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration".
- 4. Turn on the power supply of partition and start the Windows.
- 5. Login by Administrator privileges'. Reactivate according to the instructions, if the message requesting the reactivation is displayed.
- 6. Shut down after Windows is reactivated.
- 7. Remove the SB for Reserved SB, which was added in procedure 3, from the partition by using MMB Web-UI.
- 8. Add SB removed from procedure 2 to the partition.

Points to be considered for VMware

When switched to Reserved SB by the partition wherein ESX is in operation, the guest operating system may not be activated at the time of the initial start after switching to the Reserved SB.

Set the items of automatic activation of guest operating system and Blue Screen Timeout while configuring the Reserved SB in the partition wherein ESX is in operation.

For example, to reset the items 20 seconds after a panic occurs in the ESX host, set "20" to Blue Screen Timeout. **Remark**

If items are not reset, when ESX host becomes panic, set "0" to Blue Screen Timeout.

Setting method of Blue Screen Timeout from vSphere Web Client

- 1. Click the host and open [Configure] tab on vSphere Web Client.
- 2. Click [Advanced System Settings] in [System] column.

3. Click [Edit] button on the right side of [Advanced System Settings] page.

vigator I	🔋 10.123.234.11 🛛 🍇 🐉 🕞	🔥 🙆 Actions 🗸		=
Back	Getting Started Summary Monitor	Configure Profissions VMs Resou	urce Pools Datastores Networks Up	date Manager
Vcsa65.pq.sirius.com Latacenter	↔ Virtual Machines	Advanced Settings		Q Filter
	VM Startup/Shutdown	Name	Value	Summary
WM_RH72	Agent VM Settings	Annotations.WelcomeMessage		A welcome message in the initial screen 🔺
10.123.234.15	Swap file location Default VM Compatibility	BufferCache.FlushInterval	30000	Flush at this interval (milliseconds)
✓ System		BufferCache.HardMaxDirty	95	Block writers if this many buffers are dirty
	Licensing	BufferCache.PerFileHardMaxDirty	50	Block writers if this many buffers of a give
	Host Profile	BufferCache.SoftMaxDirty	15	Flush immediately if this many buffers ar
	Time Configuration	CBRC.DCacheMemReserved	400	Memory consumed by CBRC Data Cach
Authentication Certificate Power Manage	Authentication Services CB Certificate CB	CBRC.DCacheSize	32768	Size of CBRC Data Cache in MB. This ca
		CBRC.DigestJournalBootInterval	10	Interval (in minutes) for which Digest Jou
		CBRC.Enable	false	Enable Content Based Read Cache
	Advanced System Settings	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.eax	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	System Resource Reservation	onfig.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.ebx	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	Security Profile	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.ecx	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	System Swap	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.edx	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	✓ Hardware	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.1.eax	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	Processors	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.1.ebx	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	Memory	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.1.ecx	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	Power Management	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.1.edx	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	PCI Devices	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.80000		Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	✓ Virtual Flash	Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.80000		Controls the use of Config.Defaults.cpuid
	Virtual Flash Resource Management	One for Defective annual for a lange de 00000		Combrela de case of Comfor Defaulte antid
Recent Objects 🛛 👢 🗵	😨 Recent Tasks			. т.:
Viewed Created	D -			Q Filter
0.123.234.11	Task Name	Target Status	Initiator	Queued For Start Time 1 V Com

FIGURE 3.24 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout ([Configure] tab)

4. Edit screen of [Edit Advanced System Settings] appears. Enter 'BlueScreenTimeout' in the filter on the right side and search.

FIGURE 3.25 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout (Edit screen of [Edit Advanced System Settings)

10.123.234.11 - Edit Advanced System Settings

Modifying configuration parameters is unsupported and can cause instability. Continue only if you know what you are doing.

		(Q Filter				
Name	Value	Summary				
Annotations.WelcomeMessage		A welcome message in the initial scr 🛔				
BufferCache.FlushInterval	30000	Flush at this interval (milliseconds)				
BufferCache.HardMaxDirty	95	Block writers if this many buffers are				
BufferCache.PerFileHardMaxDirty	50	Block writers if this many buffers of a				
BufferCache.SoftMaxDirty	SoftMaxDirty 15 Flush immediately if this many buffer					
CBRC.DCacheMemReserved	400	Memory consumed by CBRC Data C				
CBRC.DCacheSize	32768	Size of CBRC Data Cache in MB. Thi				
CBRC.DigestJournalBootInterval	10	Interval (in minutes) for which Digest				
CBRC.Enable	Enabled	Enable Content Based Read Cache				
Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.e	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.c				
Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.e	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.c				
Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.e	disable	Controls the use of Config.Defaults.c				
		OK Cancel				

?

5. Set the Misc.BlueScreenTimeout value.

FIGURE 3.26 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout (After searching BlueScreenTimeout)

10.123.234.11 - Edit Advanced	System Settings	(
A Modifying configuration parame doing.	ters is unsupported and can o	cause instability. Continue only if you know what you are Q BlueScreenTimeout
Name	Value	Summary
Misc.BlueScreenTimeout	0	Time-out in seconds. Set to 0 for no ti
		OK Cancel

Setting method of Blue Screen Timeout from VMware Host Client

1. Click [Manage], open [System] tab, and click [Advanced settings].

FIGURE 3.27 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout ([System] tab)

vm ware [*] ESXi ^{**}			root@10.123	.234.11 👻 Help 👻 🔍 S	earch 🝷
📲 Navigator 🗉	📱 localhost.localdomain - Manag	e			
▼ 🖥 Host Manage	System Hardware Li	censing Packages Services Securit	r & users		
Monitor	Advanced settings	🧪 Edit option 🔋 🤁 Refresh 🛛 🔅 Actions		Q Search	
🖻 🛱 Virtual Machines 📃 2	Autostart Swap	Кеу 🔺 🗸 🗸	Name ~	Value ~ Default ~	Overrid ~
Storage Imaa.600000e00d2b000	Time & date	Annotations.WelcomeMessage	A welcome message in the initial scr		No 🔺
 datastore1 		BufferCache.FlushInterval		30000 30000	No
More storage		BufferCache.HardMaxDirty		95 95	No
> Q Networking 2		BufferCache.PerFileHardMaxDirty		50 50	No
		BufferCache.SoftMaxDirty		15 15	No
		CBRC.DCacheMemReserved		400 400	No
		CBRC.DCacheSize CBRC.DigestJournalBootInterval		32768 32768 10 10	No
		CBRC.Enable		false false	No
		Config.Defaults.cpuidMask.mode.0.eax		disable disable	No
		Comg.Deluditor.panamusicinode.o.com	Controls the use of control Derivation		•
					1086 items 🦽
	Recent tasks				
	Task 🗸	Target V Initiator V Qu	v Started v Re	esuit ~	Completed • •

- 2. Search BlueScreenTimeout in the search box on the right side.
- 3. Select Misc.BlueScreenTimeout and click [Edit Option].

FIGURE 3.28 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout (After searching BlueScreenTimeout)

vmware [,] Esxi ^{**}				root@10.123.2	34.11 👻 Help 👻	I 🔍 Searc	h 👻
Navigator	📋 localhost.localdomain - Man	age					
▼ 🗐 Host	System Hardware	Licensing Packages S	ervices Security & users				
Manage			1		,		
Monitor	Advanced settings Autostart	/ Edit option C Ref	resh 🛛 🔅 Actions		(Q BlueScreen	Timeout
Virtual Machines 2	Swap	Key 🔺	😔 Name	8	Value ~	Default 🗸	Overrid.
Storage Storage aa.600000e00d2b000	Time & date	Misc.BlueScreenTimeout	Time-out in	seconds. Set to 0 for no ti	0	0	No
datastore1	aa.ouuuuueuudzbuuu						1 items 🍃
More storage							
> 🧕 Networking 📃 2							
	🗐 Recent tasks						
	Task	✓ Target ✓ Ir	itiator ~ Queued	✓ Started ✓ Res	ult	~ Co	mpleted 🔻 🛛 🗸

4. [Edit Option] screen appears, set the available value of Misc.BlueScreenTimeout value and click [Save].

FIGURE 3.29 Setting of BlueScreenTimeout ([Edit Option] screen)

Edit option - Misc.BlueScreenTimeout	
New value	(long integer)
	Save Cancel

3.4.4 Partition name settings

Administrator privileges are required to set partition name. Fujitsu recommends using host name for partition name.

Operations

1. Click [Partition]-[Partition Configuration]

FIGURE 3.30 Example of [Partition Configuration] Window

Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup	Partition Configuration													[
Partition Configuration Partition#1 Extended Partitic	Select a parti	tion, then click the Add/	Remove Unit, S	let]	Part	itio	n N	am	e, oi	Ho	me	but	ton	s to	co	nfig	ure	the	pa	rtitio	n.	
Extended Socket Configurat				SB				IOU			E	Extended Partitioning										
Reserved SB Configuration	#	Partition Name	Power Status	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	3 4	5	6	7	8 !	9 1	0 1	1				
Power Management Setup	00	free	Standby	Н	_	_	_	•	_			•										
Partition#0 Partition#1	01	tange	On		н	\neg	+			+	+	+	•		+	+	+	\neg				
Partition#1 Partition#2					п	_	_	_	-	+	_	+		-	+	+	+	\neg				
Partition#3	02	free	Standby			Η				•					• •							
Partition#6	○3	free	Standby				Н			•	•							•				
Partition#7	Reserved	1																				
	Free																					
	H	represents Reserved SI represents Home SB represents Installed SB		Pa	rtitio	onir	ıg o	the	r tha	ın th	ie at	oov	e									

2. Select partition which sets the partition name and enter the partition name in [Partition name] cell. **Remark**

The name can be input up to 16 characters. The characters that can be used are as follows.

[0-9], [a-z], [A-Z], half-width space, # (Sharp), _ (Underline), and – (Hyphen)

3. Click [Set Partition Name] button.

 \rightarrow Name is set for the selected partition.

3.4.5 Various mode settings

Dynamic Reconfiguration, Memory operation mode, and Hyper Threading Mode, etc. of the partition are set. Setting items are set by MMB Web-UI and UEFI.

For details on the respective settings in MMB, see "[Mode] window" of "1.3.9 [Partition#x] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539)

For details on the respective settings in UEFI, see "3.4 [Device Manager] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539)

Note

- Confirm the I/O space is allocated in the PCI device of a relevant partition.
 - Confirm the I/O space is allocated in the SAS device (SAS card, RAID card, RAID card in DU or RAID card in SB).
 If PCI Address Mode is set to PCI Segment Mode, the I/O space cannot be allocated to SAS device on Non
 Home SB. The SAS device on Non Home SB does not need the I/O space.
 SAS device is displayed as "Device: SAS", and the FC device is displayed as "Device: Fibre". When I/O space is not allocated, operate [I/O Space Assignment Configuration] menu and remove the allocation of LAN and FC card.
 However, do not remove the allocation of I/O space for the FC card and LAN Card below.
 - For legacy boot, also confirm the allocation of the I/O space to the Intel Dual Channel LAN Card (10G BASE).
 - For legacy boot, also confirm the allocation of the I/O space to the Qlogic FC Card (8Gbps).,
- For Secure Boot, Web BIOS cannot be used. Please use HII Configuration Utility. For start HII Configuration Utility, refer to LSI MegaRAID SAS 12G Software. For how to start of HII Configuration Utility, see "Appendix F Starting HII Configuration Utility".
- For PRIMEQUEST 2400E3/2800E3/2800B3/2400E2/2800E2/2800B2, Web BIOS cannot be used. Please use HII Configuration Utility. For start HII Configuration Utility, refer to LSI MegaRAID SAS 12G Software. For how to start of HII Configuration Utility, see "Appendix F Starting HII Configuration Utility".
- If PCI Address Mode is set to PCI Segment Mode, when you set configuration of Hardware RAID to HDD/SSD on Non Home SB, confirm the PCI ROM Priority in BIOS menu is set to EFI Compatible ROM. Then, start HII Configuration Utility/Web BIOS by EFI Shell.
- Confirm whether the Boot device used in the relevant partition is recognized in the UEFI. For confirmation, see
 "3.3[Boot Manager] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539). Identify the Boot device by operating the [Boot Manager] menu when the Boot device is not recognized by the UEFI.
- A confirmation dialog box is displayed, when the DIMM configuration mismatches Reserved SB and the partition.
 When switched to Reserved SB, warning message containing the reasons for releasing Memory Operation Mode is shown and confirm whether to continue the settings.

3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection

When operating system is installed remotely, it is necessary to set Console Redirection. Set the Console Redirection to the subnet same as management LAN.

[IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] window

1. Click [Partition] - [Console Redirection Setup] - [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] window.

→ [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] window is displayed. For details on window, see "1.3.3 [Console Redirection Setup] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

setup rection Set Click	k the Apply Butto	le Redirection Se on to apply all changes. De Redirection and Virtual Me		VUSB2/rKVMS must be co	nnected to the partition
Ention E	# Partition Name	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Video Virtual Redirection Media	
	0 masuko	10 . 24 . 76 . 60	255 . 255 . 255 . 0	Enable Enable Disable Disable	
- [1 cannotboot	10 . 24 . 76 . 61	255 . 265 . 265 . 0	Enable Enable Disable Disable	
Ī	2 cannotboot	10 . 24 . 76 . 62	255 . 255 . 255 . 0	Enable Disable Disable	
	3 iijima	10 . 24 . 76 . 63	255 , 255 , 255 , 0	Enable Disable Disable	

FIGURE 3.31 Example of [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] Window

- 2. Set IP address and subnet mask to access Console Redirection LAN for IPv4
- 3. Enable video redirection and virtual media respectively.
- 4. Click [Apply] button.

Note

After installation, disable the functions not used.

[IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] window

1. Click [Partition] - [Console Redirection Setup] - [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] window.

→ [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] window is displayed. For details on window, see "1.3.3 [Console Redirection Setup] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.32 Example of [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] Window

System: Partner: User Administrati >Partition >Console Redirection Setu						Logout
	Click the Apply Button			2/KVMS n	nust be connected to the partition.	Help
Reserved SB Configuration Partition#0	# Partition Name	IP Address	Prefix Length	Video Redirection	Virtual Media	
Partition#1 Partition#2	0 masuko	1	0	 Enable Disable 	© Enable @ Disable	
Partition#3	1 cannotboot		0	 Enable Disable 	 Enable Disable 	
	2 cannotboot	::	0	 Enable Disable 	© Enable ® Disable	
	3 ijima		0	 Enable Disable 	© Enable @ Disable	
	Automatic Acquisition	Auto				
< »			[Apply] Cancel			

- Set IP address and the prefix length to access Console Redirection LAN for IPv6. When it is set automatically, IP address and the prefix length is acquired by clicking on [Auto] button.
- 3. Enable video redirection and virtual media respectively.
- 4. Click [Apply] button.

3.4.7 Power OFF and ON of the partition

Power OFF and power ON are required for each partition to reflect the configuration change in the partition. For the details of Power OFF and power ON, see "CHAPTER 7Power ON and OFF of the partition".

Remark

When the console is connected to the partition, processing continues until [UEFI] window is displayed after completion of POST (Power On Self Test) and then it stops.

3.4.8 Confirmation of partition information

The status of the partition and the partition related information is displayed. The partition configuration of the entire system of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series can be confirmed even by the [Partition Configuration] window.

Operations

1. Click [Partition]-[Partition#x]-[Information].

→[Information] window is displayed. For details on [Information] window, see "■ [Information] window" of "1.3.9 [Partition#x] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.33 Example of [Information] Window

>Partition >Partition#0 >Inform	nistration Network Configuration Maintena nation	ace	Logout
Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup	Information		Refresh Help
Partition Configuration	Partition Name		
 Extended Socket Configurat Reserved SB Configuration 	Power Status	Standby	
Reserved SB Configuration Power Management Setup	System Progress	Power Off	
Power Management Setup Partition#0	Core / Max Core	32/32	
	Physical Memory Size	64GB	
 ASR Control Console Redirection Mode 			
Partition#1			
L			

3.5 Partition Configuration (Extended Partitioning)

Extended Partitioning function can be used and a physical partition be divided into two or more partitions. Each partition that is divided by using the Extended Partitioning function is expressed as the Extended Partition. This section describes the setting of Extended Partition configuration.

It is necessary to have completed the configuration setting of a physical partition that is divided by the Extended Partitioning function before the setting of Extended Partition.

Remark

- PRIMEQUEST 2400E3, 2800E3, 2400E2, 2800E2, 2400E and 2800E are available for this function.
- Power off, power on for every partition is required to reflect the configuration change of partition.
- Performance characteristics of the Extended Partition are different from the Physical partition. Should be used after the performance verification prior.
- All screenshots are display examples. The displayed contents differ according to the system configuration.

3.5.1 Enabling the Extended Partitioning function

This section describes the operations of enabling the Extended Partitioning function.

Operations

1. Click [Partition] - [Partition#x] – [Mode]

-> [Mode] window is displayed. For details of [Mode] window, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.34 [Mode] Window Example

System Partition User Administration	on Network Configuration Main	tenance		Logout
Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Partition#1 Extended Partition Co Partition#2 Extended Partition Co	Mode Select mode for the partition, the Note : A partition power off/on is		ly Button. he selections to become effective.	Hetp
Partition#3 Extended Partition Co	Extended Partitioning Mode	setting	Enable Disable	
Reserved SB Configuration	Memory Operation Mode	current status	Normal Mode	
Power Management Setup Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#3 Information		setting	 Performance Mode Normal Mode Partial Mirror Mode Full Mirror Mode Spare Mode 	
ASR Control	Memory Mirror RAS Mode	current status	Mirror Keep Mode	
Console Redirection	Contraction and Monthly and	setting	* Mirror Keep Mode 💿 Capacity Keep Mode	
Mode	PCI Address Mode	current status	PCI Segment Mode	
Partition#4	a second second	setting	○PCI Bus Mode PCI Segment Mode	
Partition#10	Dynamic Reconfiguration	current status	Disabled	
Partition#11		setting	⊙Enable ■ Disable	
	TPM	chip status	Disabled	
	12254	current status	Deactivated	
		ownership	No	
	On board LAN Mode			
	IOU#3	current status	Enable(WOL disabled)	
		setting	 Enable(WOL enabled) Enable(WOL disabled) Disable 	
			Apply Cancel	

3.5.2 Generating the Extended Partition

This section describes generations of the Extended Partition.

Operations

 Click [Partition] - [Partition Configuration]

 -> [Partition Configuration] window is displayed. For details of [Partition Configuration] window, see "1.3.4 Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
 FIGURE 3.35 [Partition Configuration] Window Example

>Partition >Partition Configuration	In 200 2002	Configuration Mainte	and the second																11625	oout
Power Control Schedule	Partitio	n Configurat	lon																10	Help
Console Redirection Setup	rarutio	on Configurat	ion																10	new
and the second design of the second se	Select a partit	tion, then click the Ad	ARemove Unit	Set	Par	titio	n Ni	anne v	or H	lome l	batto	ns to	con	fioury	the na	artitio				
Partition#1 Extended Partition Co	ociece a parti	tion, sich chen an ris	o remore can					and a		ione i	Parice		- com		une pa	atime	21			
Partition#2 Extended Partition Co		Partition Name	Power Status		SB			IOU		Exter	ided I	Parti	tioni	ng						
Partition#3 Extended Partition Co		Partition Name	Power Status	0	1 2	3	0	1 2	3	4 5	6 7	8 9	10	11						
Reserved SB Configuration	0																			
Power Management Setup	01	PPAR RORST	Standby	1	H			•		П		Т	•							
Partition#1 Partition#2	02	PPAR-RHEL-RORST	Standby		H			•		•		T								
Partition#3	03	PPAR KVM-RORST	On	+		н		-	•			+	\square	•						
Partition#4	Reserved	10	10	10	di s									100						
Partition#10	Free			•			•			•										
Partition#11	Note) R	represents Reserved	SB										1							
Information		represents Home SB																		
ASR Control	•	represents Installed S	B/IOU/Extend	ed Pa	artit	ionir	ig of	her th	han t	the ab	ove									
Console Redirection																				
Mode																				
			Set Partition	Nor	ne	-10	Artin	Unit	ir-	Rem	we Ur	nit .	Ho	me	Cance	et				
			and a state of the					- arrest	9 L		110.00	-	1.400		-0-001-0-0					

2. Click the radio button of partition number in which Extended Partition is generated

3. Click [Add SB/IOU] Button

-> [Add SB/IOU to Partition] window is displayed. Free SB, IOU and Extended Partition are displayed in the list. For details of [Add SB/IOU to Partition] window, see "■ [Add SB/IOU to Partition] window] of "1.3.4 [Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Nower Control Ichedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Partition#1 Extended Partition Co	Add SB/IOU/Extended		ing to Partition the partition #3, then click the Apply Button.	He
Partition#2 Extended Partition Co	Free SB/IOU/Extended Partitioning	Status	Note	
Partition#3 Extended Partition Co	○SB#0	OK	Number of CPUs = 2, Memory = 64 GB	
teserved SB Configuration	O10U#0	OK	Number of PCI-Express Slots = 4	
Nower Management Setup Partition#1	O Extended Partitioning#5	OK		
Artition#1 Partition#2	O Extended Partitioning#6	OK		
Artition#3	OExtended Partitioning#7	OK		
Information	○Extended Partitioning#8	OK		
ASR Control	OExtended Partitioning#9	OK		
*artition#4 artition#10 *artition#11				

FIGURE 3.36 Example of [Add SB/IOU to Partition] Window

- Click the radio button of one Extended Partition in the physical partition.
 ->Only one Extended Partition can be selected by one operation.
- 5. Click the [Apply] button.

->Confirmation dialogue box is displayed.

6. Click [OK] button.

->The selected one Extended Partition is generated in the physical partition.

Repeat procedure 2-6 until you have generated all the required Extended Partitions.

Assigning SB resources to Extended Partition 3.5.3

Resources on the SB assign the Extended Partition.

Operations

Click [Partition]-[Partition#x Extended Partition Configuration] - [SB] 1.

-> [Extended Partition Configuration of SB Resources] window is displayed. For details of [Extended Partition Configuration of SB Resources] window, see "1.3.5 Partition#x Extended Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.37 Example of [Extended Partition Configuration of SB Resources] Window

Power Control Schedule	Exten	ded Partitio	n Con	fig	uration	ı of	SB Re	sou	irces					Help
Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Partition#1 Extended Partition Co Partition#3 Extended Partition Co Partition#3 Extended Partition Co SB IOU#3 Reserved SB Configuration Power Management Setup Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#3	buttons), c Binding og After chan Note: Onl 1.USB1: Onboa 2.VGA/I	or select radio buttor ption, check "SKT B uging configurations y home SB has the f	ns of other inding* che , click *Ap ollowing h #0, #1) parable)	SB r rck b ply* b ardw	resources. ox. rutton. are resourc	To se	lect DIMM	red t	"L option o Extende	, check	the *Mer		tly or by clicking DIMM +/- KCL* check box. To select SKT	r
Partition#4					CPU		Memory			Home	SB	SB#3		
Partition#10 Partition#11	*	Partition Name	Power Status		CORE	D I M M	GB	E X C L	SKT Binding	USB1	VGA/ USB2/ rKVMS	PCI Slot		
	11	X11	On	•	15	+	32			٠	۲	۲		
				-			1002	1		1.2.2	120			

Sets the partition name. 2.

Enter the partition name in [Partition name] cell and click [Apply] Button.

Remark

The name can be input up to 16 characters. The characters that can be used are as follows.

[0-9], [a-z], [A-Z], half-width space, # (Sharp), _ (Underline), and - (Hyphen)

3. Assign CPU resources to Extended Partition.

Enter the number of assigning CPU Core in [CPU] - [CORE] cell of the Extended Partition and click [Apply] Button.

Remark

- Clicking the [+/-] Button in [CPU] [SKT] cell can be increased or decreased the number of specified core in one CPU socket unit.
- Even if multiple Extended Partitions do not share one CPU Socket, when a CPU error occurs all Extended Partitions on the physical partition may be influenced.
- 4. Assign memory resources to Extended Partition.

Enter the capacity of memory by one gigabyte in [Memory] - [GB] cell of the Extended Partition and click [Apply] Button.

Note

- Extended partition needs at least two GB of memory capacity.

Remark

- Clicking the [+/-] Button in [Memory] [DIMM] cell can be increased or decreased the number of specified memory capacity in one DIMM module unit.
- If the check box in [Memory] [EXCL] cell of the Extended Partition is checked, all the physical DIMMs (DIMM modules) that are used by the Extended Partition are not used by other partition.
- Even if the assignment of DIMMs was physically divided, when a CPU error occurs all Extended Partitions may be influenced.
- 5. Enable the socket binding mode

Socket binding is the function that assigns two CPUs of the physical partition and the DIMMs belonging to the CPUs to the Extended Partition. Socket binding guarantees that the number of CPU socket assigned to the Extended Partition is one or two. For example, when the software license is decided by the number of CPU sockets Socket binding mode is useful.

Check the check box of [SKT Binding] field of the Extended Partition and dick the [Apply] button. Then socket binding is enabled.

If number of CPU sockets in physical partition is two or less, socket binding is not required.

Remark

If socket binding function is enabled, the assigning rule of the CPU core and the DIMM is below.

- In the case that the number specified in [CORE] is smaller than the total number of cores within two CPUs, cores of a specified number of [CORE] will be assigned to the Extended Partition.
- In the case that the number specified in [CORE] is greater than the total number of cores within two CPUs, all cores within two CPUs will be assigned to the Extended Partition.
- In the case that the capacity specified in [GB] is smaller than the total capacity of the DIMM which belonging to two CPUs, DIMM capacity specified in [GB] will be assigned to the Extended Partition.
- In the case that the capacity specified [GB] is greater than the total capacity of the DIMM belonging to two CPUs, all DIMMs belonging to two CPUs will be assigned to the Extended Partition.
- 6. Assign VGA/USB/PCI Slot resources to Extended Partition.

Select [USB1], [VGA/USB2/rKVMS] and [PCI Slot] and click [Apply] button.

Remark

- Video Redirection and virtual media can be used by the Extended Partition where selected [VGA/USB2/rKVMS]. If VGA/USB2/rKVMS is assigned to other partition the following step are required.
 - a. Power off the Extended Partition which is assigned VGA/USB2/rKVMS.
 - b. Remove VGA/USB2/rKVMS of the Extended Partition and assign VGA/USB2/rKVMS to the Extended Partition which uses Video Redirection and virtual media.

3.5.4 Assigning IOU resources to Extended Partition

Resources on the IOU assign the Extended Partition.

Operations

1. Click [Partition]-[Partition#x Extended Partition Configuration] - [IOU]

-> [Extended Partition Configuration of IOU Resources] window is displayed. For details of [Extended Partition Configuration of IOU Resources] window, see "1.3.5 Partition#x Extended Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.38 Example of [Extended Partition Configuration of IOU Resources] Window

System Partition User Administrati >Partition >Partition#3 Extended Par			nance											Logout
Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Partition#1 Extended Partition Co	tended Partit						01	U R	esour	ces				Help
Partition#2 Extended Partition Co Partition#3 Extended Partition Co	# Partition Name			Memory	IOU	norl	PCI	PCI	PCI Dis					
SB 10U#3	· Paration same	Status	Cores	GB	GbE	Slot #0	2100	2502	3100 y to	it				
Reserved SB Configuration	11 X11	On	15	32 30	۲	۲	۲	۲	•					
 Power Management Setup Partition#1 	itee	-	13	29.										
Partition#2 Partition#3														
Partition#4														
Partition#10 Partition#11														
	1													
							App	xy	Cancel					

2. Select [GbE], PCI Slot] and [DU] and click [Apply] button.

3.5.5 Assigning PCI_Box resources to Extended Partition

Resources on the PCI_Box assign the Extended Partition.

Operations

1. Click [Partition]-[Partition#x Extended Partition Configuration] - [PCI_Box]

-> [Extended Partition Configuration of PCI_Box Resources] window is displayed. For details of [Extended Partition Configuration of PCI_Box Resources] window, see "1.3.5 Partition#x Extended Partition Configuration] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.39 Example of [Extended Partition Configuration of PCI_Box Resources] Window

System Partition User Ac						enance											1	ogou
 Partition >Partition#0 External Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Se Partition Configuration 	E	xtenc	on Configuration	n Coni	figur				Box 1	Res	our	ces						Help
Partition=0 Extended Pi SB IOU#0 PCI Box#3		#	Partition Name	Dower	-	Memory	PCI PCI	Box# PCI Slot	PCI	Slot							Slot	PCI Slot #11
Reserved SB Configura		4		Standby	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
D Power Management Set		5		Standby	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Partition#0		Free			24	62	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	۰	•	•	•	•
Partition#1 Partition#4 Partition#5																		
						App	ply	Can	cel									

2. Select [PCI Slot and click [Apply] button.

3.5.6 Various mode settings

Each mode of the Extended Partition is set. Setting items of based on physical partition are shown below.

Although mode settings are shown in table below, some of the items cannot be done for each Extended Partition and they are taken over by settings of relevant Physical Partitions. While items in this table can be set per Extended Partition, some items have limitations for their setting. For details, please refer to remarks in this table. Item unremarked in "Setting item" column is configurable item for Extended Partition.

For details on the respective settings in MMB, see "■ [Mode] window" of "1.3.9 [Partition#x] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539)

For details on the respective settings in UEFI, see "3.4 [Device Manager] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539)

Note

Confirm the I/O space is allocated in the SAS device (SAS card, RAID card, RAID card in DU or RAID card in SB) of a relevant partition.

Further, also confirm the allocation of the I/O space to the FC card, onboard LAN and LAN Card (Only the card for the boot passing), while installing on the SAN storage device.

SAS device is displayed as "Device: SAS", and the FC device is displayed as "Device: Fibre". When I/O space is not allocated, operate [I/O Space Assignment Configuration] menu and remove the allocation of LAN and fibre channel. However, do not remove the allocation of I/O space for the FC card onboard LAN and LAN Card used for installation, when the operating system is installed for the storage in SAN environment.

3.5.7 Settings of Console Redirection

When operating system is installed to Extended Partition, it is necessary to assign VGA/USB2/rKVMS of SB resource and set Console Redirection.

Set the Console Redirection to the subnet same as management LAN.

Remark

If VGA/USB2/rKVMS of SB resource is not assigned Console Redirection cannot be set.

[IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] window

1. Click [Partition] - [Console Redirection Setup] - [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] window.

→ [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] window is displayed. For details on window, see "1.3.3 [Console Redirection Setup] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.40 Example of [IPv4 Console Redirection Setup] Window

nsole Redirection Setup IPv4 Console Redirection Setup	Click t	he Apply Button to app		Extended Partitioning, V	GA/USB2/rK	VMS must be connected to t	the partition.
rition#1 Extended Partition Co rtition#2 Extended Partition Co	#	Partition Name	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Video Redirection	Virtual Media	
rtition#3 Extended Partition Co served SB Configuration	1	PPAR-RORST	10 . 125 . 51 . 15	255 255 255 0	O Enable	O Enable Disable	
wer Management Setup rtition#1	2	PPAR-RHEL-RORST	10 . 125 . 61 . 17	255 255 255 . 0	OTONIC	⊙ Enable ● Disable	
rtition#2 rtition#3	3	PPAR-KVM-RORST	10 125 51 19	255 255 255 0	O Enable	O Enable ● Disable	
ntition#4 ntition#10	4	xPAR-RORST	10 125 61 23	255,255,255,0	Enable Disable	Enable Disable	
rtition#11	10		10 . 125 . 61 . 25	255 . 255 . 255 . 0	Enable Disable	Enable Disable	
	11	X11	10, 125, 61, 20	255], 255], 255], 0	€ Enable ⊖ Disable	 Enable Disable 	
	12.54						

- 2. Set IP address and subnet mask to access Console Redirection LAN for IPv4
- 3. Enable video redirection and virtual media respectively.
- 4. Click [Apply] button.

Note

After installation, disable the functions not used.

[IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] window

1. Click [Partition] - [Console Redirection Setup] - [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] window.

→ [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] window is displayed. For details on window, see "1.3.3 [Console Redirection Setup] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.41 Example of [IPv6 Console Redirection Setup] Window

	Clic	k the Apply Button to ap		ixtended Partitioning, VGA/U	SB2/rKVMS	must be connected to the partition.	Hel
Partition#1 Extended Partition Co Partition#2 Extended Partition Co	[# Partition Name	IP Address	Prefix Length	Video Redirection	Virtual Media	
Partition#3 Extended Partition Co Reserved SB Configuration		1 PPAR-RORST	E.		Enable Disable	Enable Disable	
Power Management Setup Partition#1	I	2 PPAR-RHEL-RORS	<u>1</u>]]	• Enable • Disable	Enable Disable	
Partition#2 Partition#3	Ī	3 PPAR-KVM-RORST	le.	•	• Enable • Disable	Enable Disable	
Partition#4 Partition#10	ſ	4 xPAR-RORST	10	0	⊖Enable ⊛Disable	⊖Enable ⊛Disable	
Partition#11		10		0	⊖Enable ⊕Disable	○ Enable ● Disable	
	Ī	11 X11	14 17	0	⊖Enable ⊛Disable	○Enable ● Disable	
		Automatic Acquisition	Auto				

- 2. Set IP address and the prefix length to access Console Redirection LAN for IPv6. When it is set automatically, IP address and the prefix length is acquired by clicking on [Auto] button.
- 3. Enable video redirection and virtual media respectively.
- 4. Click [Apply] button.

3.5.8 Setting of Extended Socket

This section describes the setting of Extended Socket. Enabling of Extended Socket function and setting of Zoning are needed.

Remark

- Do not start two or more MMB Web-UI screens when you change the setting of Extended Socket function and change on a single MMB Web-UI screen.
- The added procedure is necessary for changing the Zoning setting of Extended Partition which power has already been turned on. For more detail, see "3.2.2 Extended Socket" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration manual (CA92344-0537).

Enabling of Extended Socket

Click [Partition]-[Partition#x]-[Mode].
 →[Mode] window is displayed. For details on [Mode] window, see "■ [Mode] window" of "1.3.9 [Partition#x] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

>Partition >Partition#4 >Mode Help Schedule Mode Console Redirection Setup Partition Configurat Select mode for the partition, then click the Apply Button. Partition#1 Extended Partition Cor • Note : A partition power off on is required for the selections to become effective. ion#2 Extended Partition Cor artition#3 Extended Partition Cor Memory Operation Mode current status Normal Mode stended Socket Configuration setting O Performance Mode Reserved SB Configur · Normal Mode Power Management Setup O Partial Mirror Mode Partition#1 Full Mirror Mode Partition#2 Spare Mode Memory Mirror RAS Mode current status Mirror Keep Mode setting * Mirror Keep Mode Capacity Keep Mode Information PCI Address Mode current status PCI Bus Mode ASR Control PCI Bus Mode OPCI Segment Mode setting Co ole Redirection Dynamic Reconfiguration current status Disabled Mode setting Enable Disable TPM chip status Disabled current status Deactivated ownership No Extended Socket ●Enable ○Disable setting Apply Cancel

FIGURE 3.42 Example of [Mode] Window

- 2. Select [Enable] of setting of Extended Socket.
- 3. Click [Apply] button.

Setting of Zoning

1. Click [Partition]-[Extended Socket Configuration].

→[Extended Socket Configuration] window is displayed. For details on [Extended Socket Configuration] window, see of "1.3.6 [Extended Socket Configuration] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.43 Example of [Extended Socket Configuration] Window

Checklase Extended Socket Configuration antion Configuration celet Zone# radio button for the partition, then click the Apply Button. artition#2 Extended Partition Configuration celet Zone# radio button for the partition, then click the Apply Button. artition#2 Extended Partition Configuration mone 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 artition#3 Extended Partition Configuration # P# Power Status Extended Socket Zone# 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 artition#3 Extended Socket 1 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 artition#3 artition#6 2 Standby Enabled 0	Schedule Extended Socket Configuration Partition Configuration Schedule Partition#1 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#2 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#3 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#3 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#3 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#1 Partition#1 Partition#1 Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#2 Partition#3 Partition#3 Partition#4 Partition#4 Partition#3 Partition#4 Partition#4 Partition#5 Partition#6 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10	 Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Partition 2 Extended Partition Configuration Partition 3 Extended Partition Configuration Partition 4 Extended Partition Configuration Partition 3 Extended Partition Configuration Power Management Setup Partition 4 Partition 4 Standby Enabled Partition 5 Part	Power Control															
Monsole Redirection Setup artition Configuration artition#1 Extended Partition Configuration (served SB Configuration everved SB Configuration (served SB Configuration everved SB Configuration (served SB	Console Redirection Setup Select Zone# radio button for the partition, then click the Apply Button. Partition#1 Extended Partition Configuration Select Zone# radio button for the partition, then click the Apply Button. Partition#2 Extended Partition Configuration # P# Power Status Extended Socket Partition#3 Extended Partition Configuration # P# Power Status Extended Socket Reserved SB Configuration Reserved SB Configuration 6 2 Standby Enabled 0	Console Redirection Setup Partition#1 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#2 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#3 Extended Partition Configuration Reserved SB Configuration Portition#1 Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#3 Extended Partition Configuration Reserved SB Configuration Portition#1 Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#3 Extended Socket Configuration Portition#1 Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#3 Partition#4 Partition#4 Partition#6 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10		E	xten	de	d Socket	Configurat	ion									
artition#1 Extended Partition Configuration ## P# Power Status Extended Socket Tone 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 artition#3 Extended Partition Configuration ## P# Power Status Extended Socket none 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 artition#3 Extended Configuration # 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 ower Management Setup artition#1 attion#1 Standby Enabled 0	Partition#1 Extended Partition Configuration 2 Extended Partition Configuration 3 Extended Partition Configuration 4 1 Standby Enabled 4 1 Standby Enabled 6 2 Standby Enabled 7 3 Standby Enabled 7 4 1 1 Standby Enabled 7 4 1 1 Standby Enabled 7 5 4 5 6 7 4 1 1 1 1 Standby Enabled 7 5 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	Partition#1 Extended Partition Config Partition#2 Extended Partition Config Partition#3 Extended Partition Config Extended Socket Configuration Reserved SB Configuration Power Management Setup Partition#2 Partition#3 Partition#4 Partition#3 Partition#4 Partition#3 Partition#6 Partition#6 Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#1 Partition#1 11 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10 Standby Enabled 0 0 0	Console Redirection Setup	_														
# Introm#1 Extended Partition Configuration # P# Power Status Extended Socket Zone# # B# P# Power Status Extended Socket none 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 # thion#3 Extended Socket Configuration I 1 Standby Enabled Image: Status	Partition# I Extended Partition Configuration Image: Configuration Configuration Bartition#3 Extended Partition Configuration Image: Configuration Reserved SB Configuration 4 1 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Power Management Setup 7 3 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration Partition#1 7 3 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration Partition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled Image: Configuration Image: Configuration	Partition#1 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#2 Extended Partition Configuration Partition#3 Extended Partition Configuration Reserved SB Configuration Power Management Setup Partition#1 Partition#3 Partition#3 Partition#4 1 Standby Extended Socket 0 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Partition#1 5 Standby Enabled 0	Partition Configuration	Sel	ect Zon	e# r	adio button for	the partition, then o	fick t	he Ar	ophy	Butt	on.					
# P# Power Status Extended Socket none 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 eserved SB Configuration eserved SB Configuration eserved SB Configuration 0	Partition#3 Extended Partition Coefficient # P# Power Status Extended Socket Description Reserved SB Configuration A 1 Standby Enabled 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 4 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#1 Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#4 0 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#8 Partition#9 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#9 Partition#10 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 <th># P# Power Status Extended Socket Derition#3 Extended Socket Configuration Pertended Socket Configuration Power Management Setup Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#3 Partition#4 Partition#6 Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10</th> <th>Partition#1 Extended Partition Config</th> <th></th>	# P# Power Status Extended Socket Derition#3 Extended Socket Configuration Pertended Socket Configuration Power Management Setup Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#3 Partition#4 Partition#6 Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10	Partition#1 Extended Partition Config															
automice Scheder Configuration eserved SB Configuration over Management Setup artition#1 4 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 6 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 7 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 10 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0	Principal Societ Configuration 4 1 Standby Enabled 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Reserved SB Configuration 4 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Power Management Setup 7 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#1 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#9 9 Partition#9	Extended Socket Configuration endland none 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Reserved SB Configuration 4 1 Standby Enabled O 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 Partition#1 Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled O 0<			-				Z	onel	ł							
4 1 Standby Enabled 0 <	Reserved SB Configuration 4 1 Standby Enabled 0	4 1 Standby Enabled 0 <				P#	Power Status	Extended Socket	none	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
6 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#1 7 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#8 artition#9 artition#10 0 0 0 0 0 0	Reserved SB Configuration 6 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Power Management Setup 7 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#1 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10	Reserved SB Configuration Power Management Setup Partition#1 Partition#2 Partition#2 Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 1 11 </td <td></td> <td></td> <td>4</td> <td>1</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Enabled</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>۲</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td></td>			4	1	Standby	Enabled	0	0	۲	0	0	0	0	0	0	
7 3 Standby Enabled Image: Constraint Setup attition#1 artition#1 8 3 Standby Enabled Image: Constraint Setup attition#3 artition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled Image: Constraint Setup attition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled Image: Constraint Setup attition#6 artition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled Image: Constraint Setup attition#8 artition#9 artition#10	Partition#1 7 3 Standby Enabled Image: Constraint of the second sec	Power Management Setup 7 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#1 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10 0 0 0 0 0			6	2	Standby	Enabled	0	_	0	0	0	0	0	0	۲	
artition#1 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 artition#8 artition#9 artition#10 0 0 0 0 0 0	Partition#1 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10	Partition#2 8 3 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#7 Partition#7 Partition#7 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#7 Partition#7 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#10 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			-	-					õ	õ	-	ŏ	Õ	ŏ	ŏ	
artition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled O O O O artition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled O O O O artition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled O O O O artition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled O O O O artition#8 artition#9 artition#10	Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled O O O O O Partition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled O O O O O Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled O O O O O Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10	Partition#3 9 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#6 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#7 11 1 Standby Enabled 0 0 0 0 0 Partition#7 Partition#10 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			8	3					0	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	
artition#7 artition#7 artition#7 artition#7 artition#8 artition#9 artition#10	Partition#4 Partition#6 Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10	Partition#4 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>ŏ</td> <td></td> <td><u> </u></td> <td>ŏ</td> <td>ŏ</td> <td>ŏ</td> <td></td>				1						ŏ		<u> </u>	ŏ	ŏ	ŏ	
artition#6 artition#7 artition#8 artition#10	Partition#6 10 2 Standby Enabled 0 <td>Partition#6 10 2 Standey Enabled 0<td></td><td></td><td></td><td>1</td><td></td><td></td><td>_</td><td></td><td>ő</td><td>K</td><td>_</td><td>Hĕ</td><td>Ĭŏ</td><td>K</td><td>Ĭ</td><td></td></td>	Partition#6 10 2 Standey Enabled 0 <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>1</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>_</td> <td></td> <td>ő</td> <td>K</td> <td>_</td> <td>Hĕ</td> <td>Ĭŏ</td> <td>K</td> <td>Ĭ</td> <td></td>				1			_		ő	K	_	Hĕ	Ĭŏ	K	Ĭ	
artibon#7 artibon#8 artibon#9 artibon#10	Partition#7 Partition#8 Partition#9 Partition#10	D Partition#7 D Partition#8 D Partition#9 D Partition#10	Partition#6			-			×		-	K	×	Hĕ	Ĭŏ	Hŏ	- Č	
artition#9 artition#10	Partition#9 Partition#10	Partition#9 Partition#10	Partition#7			1	standby	Endored	0					10		10		
artition=10	Parthion#10	Partition#10	Partition#8															
arthios #11	Partition#11	Partition#11																
20000-11			Partition#11															
		Apply Cancel																

2. Select [Zone#] for each Extended Partition.

Zone which configured by FIGURE 3.43 Example of [Extended Socket Configuration] Window is displayed below.

Zone#	Extended Partition included in Zone
0	Partition#7
	Partition#8
1	Partition#4
	Partition#9
	Partition#11
7	Partition#6
	Partition#10

3. Click [Apply] button.

3.5.9 Power OFF and ON of the Extended Partition

Power OFF and power ON are required for each Extended Partition to reflect the configuration change in the Extended Partition. For the details of Power OFF and power ON, see "CHAPTER 7 Power ON and OFF of the partition".

3.5.10 Confirmation of Extended Partition information

The status of the partition and the partition related information is displayed. The partition configuration of the entire system of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series can be confirmed even by the [Partition Configuration] window.

Operations

1. Click [Partition]-[Partition#x]-[Information].

→[Information] window is displayed. For details on [Information] window, see "■ [Information] window" of "1.3.9 [Partition#x] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.44 Example of [Information] Window

	Network Configuration Maintenance		Logout
Partition * Partition #11 > Information Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup	Information		Refresh Help
Partition Configuration Partition®1 Extended Partition Co Partition%2 Extended Partition Co Partition%2 Extended Partition Co Partition%2 Extended Partition Co Partition%2 Extended Partition Co Partition%1 Partition%2 Partition%3 Partition%4 Partition%10	Partition Name Power Status System Progress Assigned Core / Requested Core Assigned Memory Size / Requested Memory Size	X11 On Boot 15/15 32GB/32GB	
ASR Control Console Redirection			

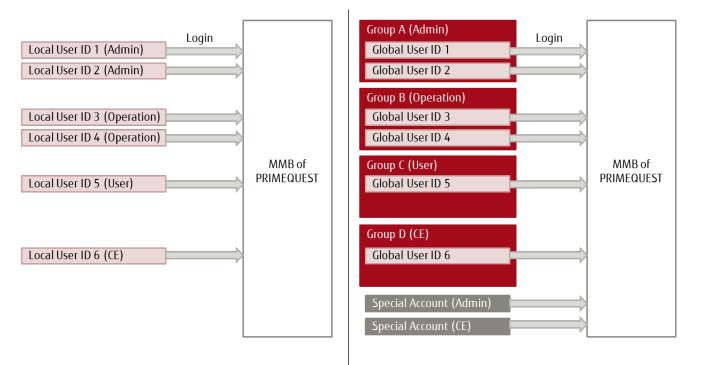
3.6 Setting of LDAP

Here explains the setting of LDAP.

3.6.1 User Management using an LDAP directory service

User Management using an LDAP is shown below.

FIGURE 3.45 User Management using an LDAP



(A) User Management in case of LDAP Disabled

(B) User Management in case of LDAP Enabled

(A):User Management not using an LDAP.

- Local User ID is registered by method shown by "3.3.10 Registration of User Account". When LDAP is disabled, privilege is assigned to each user ID and MMB are accessed within the authority.

(B): User Management using an LDAP.

- When LDAP is enabled, Global User ID which registered to Directory Service is used to access to MMB. Global User ID is allocated to a Group and the Group is assigned the privilege for access MMB. In above figure, Group A is assigned Administrative privileges. Global Users which included in Group A (i.e. Global User ID 1 and Global User ID 2) have Administrative privilege for access to MMB.
- When LDAP is enabled, Special Accounts are used. Special Accounts are two accounts. One is for Administrator and another is for CE (field engineer).
 - Special Account for Administrator When LDAP has a problem, administrator accesses MMB using this account.

- Special Account for CE

Field engineer use this account for server maintenance. Field engineer accesses MMB using this account or Global User ID for field engineer.

3.6.2 Overview of LDAP settings

Overview of LDAP settings is shown below.

Remark

LDAP settings are required familiarity to directory services. Except the administrator who is familiar with the directory service, do not set up the LDAP.

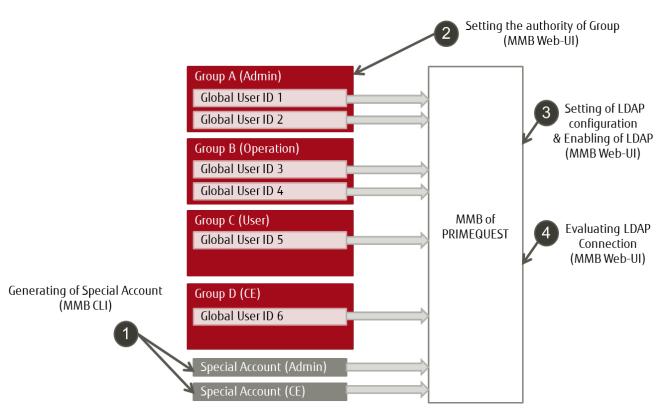


FIGURE 3.46 Overview of LDAP settings

- 1. Generating of Special Account using CLI of MMB.
- 2. Setting the authority of Group on MMB Web-UI
- 3. Setting of LDAP configuration and Enabling of LDAP on MMB Web-UI
- 4. Evaluating LDAP Connection

3.6.3 Setting procedure of LDAP (Active Directory)

Here explains setting procedure of LDAP (Active Directory).

The procedure which is explained in this section is example for the configuration of Directory Service below.

- Global User to access to MMB is "mmbadmin".
- Group that Global User "mmbadmin" belongs is "MMB_Admin".

Remark

- The following directory configuration is an example. The procedure of setting the directory configuration is not mentioned in this manual. For details of their procedure, refer to the document of Directory Service.
- Global User ID and password on Directory Service follow the setting rule of MMB account. For the detail of the setting rule of MMB account, see 1.4[User Administration] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- Group name on Directory Service follows the setting rule of User Group of MMB. For the detail of the setting rule of MMB account, see 1.4.4.3 [Add LDAP User Group] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- 1. Generating Special Account using CLI of MMB.
 - a. A user with Administrator authority logins to MMB CLI using the terminal software.
 - b. Generate Special Account (Admin) and Special Account (CE) using following command.
 # set special_account <user name> <privilege: [admin | ce] {quiet} <password> <confirum password>
 Remark

User name and Password of Special Account are conformed to the setting rule of MMB account. For the detail of the setting rule of MMB account, see 1.4[User Administration] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Example 1: Special Account (Admin) User name: spadmin Authority: Administrator Password: xxxxxxxxx

Administrator> set special_account spadmin admin Are you sure you want to add spadmin? [Y/N]: y Password:xxxxxxxxx Confirm Password:xxxxxxxxx Administrator>

Example 2: Special Account (CE)

User name: spce

Authority: CE

Password: zzzzzzzzz

Administrator> set special_account spce ce Are you sure you want to add spce? [Y/N]: y Password:zzzzzzzz Confirm Password:zzzzzzzz Administrator>

- c. Confirm logged in MMB by using their special accounts.
- 2. Setting the privileges of Group on MMB Web-UI.

Generate User Group which name is same as name of Group generated in Directory Server and give the User Group the access privileges to MMB.

a. Click a. [User Administration] - [LDAP Configuration] - [LDAP User Group List]

-> [LDAP User Group List] is displayed. For the detail of [LDAP User Group List], see 1.4.4.2 [LDAP User Group List] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.47 [LDAP User Group List] Window

	System Partition User Administration Network Configuration Maintenance Logout >User Administration >LDAP Configuration >LDAP User Group List				Logout 🗸
 User List Change Password Who LDAP Configuration 	LDAP User Group List				Help
 Directory Service Configur LDAP User Group List 	Select a group, then click the Edit/Remove	e Group button	to edit or rem Status	ove the group. Operable Partition (for Partition Operator)	
	Add Group	Edit Group	Remove Grou	p Cancel	

b. Click a [Add Group] button.

-> [Add LDAP User Group] is displayed. For the detail of [Add LDAP User Group], see 1.4.4.2 [Add LDAP User Group] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.48 [Add LDAP User Group] Window

System Partition User Administration >User Administration >LDAP Configurat			Logout 🗸
 Who LDAP Configuration Directory Service Configur 	LDAP User G	-	Help
)AP User Group Name		
	ivilege atus	Admin Operator OUser OCE OPartition Operator	
	atus berable Partition	●Enabled ●Disabled 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11	
	or Partition Operator)		
_			
		Apply Cancel	^

- c. Input LDAP User Group Name
 LDAP User Group Name is same as the name of Group in Directory Service generated by procedure 2.
 "MMB_Admin" is input in this example.
- d. Select the privilege for access to MMB. "Administrator" is selected in this example.
- e. Enable Status
- f. Click a [Apply] button.

-> The dialog box of confirmation is displayed.

g. Click a [OK] button.

-> The User Group is added. The information of the User Group can be confirmed in [User Group List] Window.

	tration Network Configuration Maintenance				Logout
	onfiguration >LDAP User Group List				
User List					
Change Password	LDAP User Group List				Help
• Who					
	Click the Add Group button to add a new				
	Select a group, then click the Edit/Remov	e Group buttor	ı to edit or rem	ove the group.	
LDAP User Group List					
	LDAP User Group Name	Privilege	Status	Operable Partition (for Partition Operator)	
	OMMB.Admin	Admin	Enabled		
		Admin	Linabled		
	Add Group	Edit Group	Remove Group	D Cancel	^
	Add Gloup	Luit Oroup	Remove Orou	p Galicel	

FIGURE 3.49 [LDAP User Group List] Window (after generating User Group)

3. Setting of LDAP configuration and Enabling of LDAP on MMB Web-UI.

LDAP configuration is set using [Directory Service Configuration] Window.

Setting items is different from using Directory Service.

Remark

To enable LDAP, the following accounts and LDAP User Group are needed.

- Special Account (Admin)
- Special Account (CE)
- LDAP User Group which has Administrator privilege and is enabled (one group or more).

When LDAP is enabled without these, dialog box is displayed and LDAP is not enabled.

a. Click a [User Administration] - [LDAP Configuration] - [Directory Service Configuration].
 -> [Directory Service Configuration] Window is displayed. For the detail of [Directory Service Configuration] Window, see 1.4.4.1 [Directory Service Configuration] Menu' of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Backup LDAP Server

User Search Context LDAP Group Scheme

LDAP Member Scheme

Groups directory as sub-tree from base DN

Domain Name Base DN

vork Configuration | Main em Partiti Net >User Administration >LDAP Configuration >Directory Service Configuration User List **Directory Service Configuration** Change Password Who
LDAP Configura Click the Apply Button to apply all changes. Directory Service Configuration
 LDAP User Group List **Global Directory Service Configuration** LDAP Enable
Disable LDAP SSL O Enable
 Disable Directory Server Type Active Directory V LDAP Server Primary LDAP Server LDAP Port 389 LDAP SSL Port 636

> LDAP Server LDAP Port

LDAP SSL Port

389

636

group

Apply Cancel Test LDAP

member

DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=j

FIGURE 3.50 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (1/2)

FIGURE 3.51 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (2/2)

User List Change Password Who	Directory Service Configuration			Hel
Vho DAP Configuration	Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Port	389	
Directory Service Configuration		LDAP SSL Port	636	
LDAP User Group List	Domain Name			
	Base DN		DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	Groups directory as sub-tree fro	om base DN		
	User Search Context			
	LDAP Group Scheme		group	
	LDAP Member Scheme		member	
	Directory Service Access Config LDAP Auth UserName			
	LDAP Auth UserName			
	Confirm Password			
	Principal User DN Append Base DN to Principal V	Iner DN	Enable Disable	
	Bind DN	User DIN	cn=adminadmin,ou=1-1,ou=fct,DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	Enhanced User Login		Enable O Disable	
	User Login Search Filter		(&(objectclass=person)(cn=%s))	

b. Enter each item in [Directory Service Configuration] Window.

Settings for Active Directory

out

Help

0

Select Active Directory to Directory Server Type and set each setting items.

Remark

If other Directory Service of Directory Server Type is selected each setting items are initialized.

TABLE 3.9 Setting item in [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory)

Item		Setting value and description
Global Directory Service Configuration		
LDAP		The Enabled/Disabled of LDAP.
LDAP SSL		When the transmission of the data between MMB and the directory
		server is encrypted with SSL, select the "Enabled".
Directory Server Type		Select Directory Service. If other Directory Service of Directory
		Server Type is selected each setting items are initialized.
Primary LDAP Server	_	The setting of Directory Server.
	LDAP Server	IP Address or DNS name of Directory Server
	LDAP Port	LDAP Port of Directory Server (using in SSL Disabled)
	LDAP SSL Port	Secure LDAP Port of Directory Server (using in SSL Enabled)
Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Server	The setting of Backup Directory Server. When Backup Directory
	LDAP Port	Server is not used these items can be omitted.
	LDAP SSL Port	
Domain Name		Full path name of DNS of Backup Directory Server.
Base DN		Setting is not needed.
		Base DN is generated from Domain Name.
Groups directory as sub-tre	ee from base DN	The path of Organizational Unit (OU) including Group.
User Search Context		Setting is not needed.
LDAP Group Scheme		Setting is not needed.
LDAP Member Scheme		Setting is not needed.
Directory Service Access (Configuration	
LDAP Auth UserName		User name to log in LDAP Server
LDAP Auth Password		User password to log in LDAP Server
Confirm Password		User password to reconfirm.
		(Input the same content as LDAP Auth Password.)
Principal User DN		Setting is not needed.
Append Base DN to Princi	pal User DN	Setting is not needed.
Bind DN		Setting is not needed.
Enhanced User Login		Setting is not needed.
User Login Search Filter		Setting is not needed.

The setting example is shown as follows.

FIGURE 3.52 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (The setting example 1)

st Password	Directory Service C	onfiguration		Hel
Configuration ctory Service Configura P User Group List				
	Global Directory Service Config	uration		
	LDAP LDAP SSL		Enable Disable Enable Disable	
	Directory Server Type		Active Directory	
	Directory Server Type	LDAP Server	10.24.17.199	
	Primary LDAP Server	LDAP Port	389	
		LDAP SSL Port	636	
		LDAP Server	adfujitsu.co.jp	
	Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Port	389	
	Dackup LDAF Server	LDAP SSL Port	636	
	Domain Name	LDAF 35L FOI	adfujitsu.co.jp	
	Base DN		DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
		(D)		
	Groups directory as sub-tree fr	om base DN	OU=Groups	
	User Search Context		CN=Users,DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	LDAP Group Scheme		group	
	LDAP Member Scheme		member	

FIGURE 3.53 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Active Directory) (The setting example 2)

List ige Password	Directory Service C	Configuration		Help
P Configuration	Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Port LDAP SSL Port	636	
rectory Service Configuration DAP User Group List	Domain Name		adfujitsu.co.jp	
	Base DN		DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	Groups directory as sub-tree	from base DN	OU=Groups	
	User Search Context		CN=Users,DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	LDAP Group Scheme		group	
	LDAP Member Scheme		member	
	Directory Service Access Conf	iguration		
	LDAP Auth UserName		Administrator	
	LDAP Auth Password		••••••	
	Confirm Password		••••••	
	Principal User DN			
	Append Base DN to Principa	l User DN	Enable Disable	
	Bind DN		cn=Administrator,CN=Users,DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	Enhanced User Login		Enable O Disable	
	User Login Search Filter		(&(objectclass=person)(cn=%s))	

Settings for Novell eDirectory/OpenLDAP/OpenDS/Open DJ

Select using Directory Service (Novell eDirectory, OpenLDAP, OpenDS/Open DJ) from Directory Server Type and set each setting items.

Remark

If other Directory Service of Directory Server Type is selected each setting items are initialized.

TABLE 3.10 Setting item in [Direct	orv Service Configuration Window	(Novell eDirectory/OpenLDAP/OpenDS/OpenDJ)

	Item	Setting value and description
Global Directory Service Configuration		
LDAP		The Enabled/Disabled of LDAP.
LDAP SSL		When the transmission of the data between MMB and the directory
		server is encrypted with SSL, select the "Enabled".
Directory Server Type		Select Directory Service. If other Directory Service of Directory
		Server Type is selected each setting items are initialized.
Primary LDAP Server		The setting of Directory Server.
	LDAP Server	IP Address or DNS name of Directory Server
	LDAP Port	LDAP Port of Directory Server (using in SSL Disabled)
	LDAP SSL Port	Secure LDAP Port of Directory Server (using in SSL Enabled)
Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Server	The setting of Backup Directory Server. When Backup Directory
	LDAP Port	Server is not used these items can be omitted.
	LDAP SSL Port	
Domain Name		Setting is not needed.
Base DN		Specifying of Base DN.
Groups directory as sub-tre	ee from base DN	The path of Organizational Unit (OU) including Group.
		Specify the path from Base DN.
		In BA16036, BB16036 or later, this can be omitted. When this item
		is omitted, value of Base DN is set as search start point.
		In version before BA16036, BB16036, this cannot be omitted.
User Search Context		In BA16036, BB16036 or later, this can specify the starting position
		of the user search. When this item is omitted, value of Base DN is
		set after applying.
		In version before BA16036, BB16036, setting is not needed.
LDAP Group Scheme		In BA16036, BB16036 or later, this can set LDAP Group Scheme.
		The initial value is "groopOfNames".
		Setting value changes by the Directory structure that was built on
		the directory server.
		In version before BA16036, BB16036, setting is not needed.
LDAP Member Scheme		In BA16036, BB16036 or later, this can set LDAP Member
		Scheme.
		The initial value is "member".
		Setting value changes by the Directory structure that was built on
		the directory server.
		In version before BA16036, BB16036, setting is not needed.

Item	Setting value and description
Directory Service Access Configuration	
LDAP Auth UserName	User name to log in LDAP Server
LDAP Auth Password User password to log in LDAP Server	
Confirm Password	User password to reconfirm.
	(Input the same content as LDAP Auth Password.)
Principal User DN	Setting of Principal User DN.
Append Base DN to Principal User DN	Specifying of adding Base DN to Principal User DN.
Bind DN	Setting is not needed.
	Principal User DN using by LDAP authentication is displayed after
	setting is saved.
Enhanced User Login	In BA16036, BB16036 or later, this can set the Enable/Disable of
	Enhanced User Login. When enabled, specifying of the user login
	search filter is available.
	In version before BA16036, BB16036, setting is not needed.
User Login Search Filter	In BA16036, BB16036 or later, this can set the User Login Search
	Filter.
	The standard Search Filter "(&(objectclass=person)(cn=%s))" is
	displayed. For login, the place folder "%s" is replaced to
	corresponding Global Login.
	Setting value changes by the Directory structure that was built on
	the directory server.
	In version before BA16036, BB16036, setting is not needed.

The setting example is shown as follows.

FIGURE 3.54 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (OpenLDAP) (The setting example 1)

System Partition User Administration >User Administration >LDAP Config				Logout 🗸
User List Change Password Who LDAP Configuration Directory Service Configuratic LDAP User Group List	Directory Service C	C		Help
	Global Directory Service Confi	guration		
	LDAP		Enable ODisable	
	LDAP SSL		○ Enable	
	Directory Server Type	LDAP Server	10.26.102.197	
	Primary LDAP Server	LDAP Port	389	
		LDAP SSL Port	636	
		LDAP Server		
	Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Port	389	
		LDAP SSL Port	636	
	Domain Name			
	Base DN		dc=CASdomain,dc=local	
	Groups directory as sub-tree f	rom base DN	ou=mmbAuth	
	User Search Context		ou=mmbUser,dc=CASdomain,dc=local	
	LDAP Group Scheme		groupOfNames	
	LDAP Member Scheme		member	~
		Apply Can	Icel Test LDAP	^
< >>				~

FIGURE 3.55 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (OpenLDAP) (The setting example 2)

System Partition User Administrat				Logo	ut 🗸
 User List Change Password 		Directory Service Cor		Н	elp
Who LDAP Configuration		Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Port LDAP SSL Port	636	~
 Directory Service Configuratic LDAP User Group List 		Domain Name	1		
		Base DN		dc=CASdomain,dc=local	
		Groups directory as sub-tree from base DN		ou=mmbAuth	
		User Search Context		ou=mmbUser,dc=CASdomain,dc=local	
		LDAP Group Scheme		groupOfNames	
		LDAP Member Scheme		member	
Directory Service Access Configuration					
		LDAP Auth UserName			
		LDAP Auth Password		•••••	
		Confirm Password		•••••	
		Principal User DN		cn=mmbadmin,ou=mmbUser,dc=CASdomain,dc=local	
		Append Base DN to Principal Us	er DN	○ Enable	
		Bind DN		cn=mmbadmin,ou=mmbUser,dc=CASdomain,dc=local	
		Enhanced User Login		○ Enable	
		User Login Search Filter		(&(objectclass=person)(cn=%s))	
Apply Cancel Test LDAP					

- c. Click [Apply] button after input each setting item.
 -> Dialog box of confirming is displayed.
- d. Click [OK] button.-> The setting is reflected.
- 4. Evaluating LDAP connection

Remark

- Evaluate LDAP connection before current session of MMB Web-UI is closed.
- When setting of [Directory Service Configuration] Window is changed, click [Apply] button before evaluating LDAP connection. If LDAP connection is evaluated before [Apply] button is clicked, LDAP connection is evaluated at previous setting.
- It becomes impossible to log in MMB by Local User ID and Global User ID when the session of MMB Web-UI is closed while having failed in LDAP connection test or having mistaken a set value of LDAP. In that case, log in by Special Account and correct setting of LDAP.
- a. Click a [Test LDAP] in [Directory Service Configuration] Window.
 ->Connected test is executed.

FIGURE 3.56 [Directory Service Configuration] Window (Test LDAP)

1 Partition User Administration	Network Configuration Maintenar	<u>ice</u>		Logout
Administration >LDAP Configur	ation >Directory Service Configuration	on		Ŷ
List 1ge Password	Directory Service Configuration			Help
P Configuration irectory Service Configuration DAP User Group List	Click the Apply Button to apply all c	hanges.		^
	Global Directory Service Configu	ration		
	LDAP		Enable Disable	
	LDAP SSL		Enable Disable	
	Directory Server Type		Active Directory V	
		LDAP Server	10.24.17.199	
	Primary LDAP Server	LDAP Port	389	
		LDAP SSL Port	636	
		LDAP Server	adfujitsu.co.jp	
	Backup LDAP Server	LDAP Port	389	
		LDAP SSL Port	636	
	Domain Name		adfujitsu.co.jp	
	Base DN		DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	Groups directory as sub-tree fro	m base DN	OU=Groups	
	User Search Context		CN=Users,DC=adfujitsu,DC=co,DC=jp	
	LDAP Group Scheme		group	
	LDAP Member Scheme		member	~
		Apply Cance	el Test LDAP	^

b. Check the result of test.

- When connection test is succeeded following dialog box is displayed.

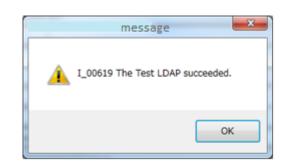


FIGURE 3.57 Dialog box which in case connection test is succeeded.

- When connection test is failed following dialog box is displayed.

FIGURE 3.58 Dialog box which in case connection test is failed.



3.7 Storage of the configuration information

Here explains the storage of the information configured at the time of installation. Take the backup of the MMB configuration information.

Remark

Regularly take the backup of the MMB configuration information after the operation begins. All the printed windows are examples of the display. The contents that are displayed by the system configuration are different.

3.7.1 Backup of the MMB configuration information

Here explains the Backup of the MMB configuration information.

Remark

The configuration information is restorable only with the PRIMEQUEST chassis which backed it up. For the details of MMB configuration information restore see "8.12 Backup/Restore of MMB configuration n information" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

Operating principle

1. Click [Maintenance] - [Backup/Restore Configuration] - [Backup/Restore MMB Configuration]

→ The Backup/Restore MMB Configuration window is displayed. For [Backup/Restore MMB Configuration] window see "[■ Backup/Restore MMB Configuration] window" of "1.6.2 [Backup/Restore Configuration] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 3.59 Example of [Backup/Restore MMB Configuration] Window

System Partition User Administra >Maintenance >Backup Restore Co	nice Network Configuration Manufactures onfiguration >Backup Restore MMB Configuration	Logout
Einnware Update Backup Restore Configuration Backup Restore MMB Config Backup BIOS Configuration Restore BIOS Configuration	Backup MMB Configuration To backup the MMB Configuration, click "Backup" button. Backup	(Help)
Meintenance Wizard REMCS	Restore MMB Configuration To restore the MMB Configuration, select a file and click "Restore" button.	
	Restore	
2. Click the [E	Backup] button.	
\rightarrow The stor	age location dialog box of the browser is displayed.	
3. Select the	storage path and click the [OK] button.	
→The dow	vnload of configuration information file begins.	
The initial \	value name of the MMB configuration information file to be backed up is as follows.	

MMB_(Backup date)_(MMB version).dat

CHAPTER 4 Installation of Operating System and bundled software

The installation method of operating system and the bundled software is explained here. All the inserted windows are examples of display and the contents displayed by the system configuration, etc. are different.

4.1 Installation procedure of Operating System and bundled

software

When Boot Watchdog is enabled, during installation operation, partition reset may occur unpredictably by Boot Watchdog function. Therefore, Boot Watchdog is cancelled before operating system is installed. For the cancellation method see "9.4.1 Automatic reboot condition setting of partition" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537). SVIM(ServerView Installation Manager) is used to install operating system in the partition of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series. SVIM is a setup support tool to execute the below mentioned operations.

- Installation of operating system
- Installation of driver necessary for the operating system
- Installation of the bundled software

For the software which is automatically installed by using SVIM see "3.3 Bundled software" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series General Description (CA92344-0534).

For SVIM outline see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

Moreover, there are points to be noted for SVIM. See FUJITSU Server PRIMEQUEST 2000/1000 Series Notes on ServerView Suite(CA92344-0679).

Notes

Confirm the installation of SAN boot environment, installation of VMware as follows.

- Configuration of SAN boot environment
 - When SAN boot environment is to be installed, the SAN boot environment is configured before the operating system is installed.

For the construction of SAN boot environment, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.

- When the installation VMware of operating system and the bundled software is to be installed then the procedure is different. For Notes on VMware installation, see "Appendix D Notes on VMware installation".

Notes

Disable Secure Boot before you install OS.

Secure boot is set by BIOS menu. Initial value of secure boot is "disabled". Please see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference for setting method of secure boot.

4.2 Install procedure of Operating System to Extended Partition

Here explains the points to be noted for the procedure to install Operating System to Extended Partition.

 Virtual Media is available to only one Extended Partition of PPAR Partition if VGA/USB2 is assigned to the Extended Partition. Therefore, when OS is installed with another Extended Partition on the same Physical Partition after installation of OS, it is necessary to power OFF the Physical Partition and reassignment of VGA/USB2 to the Extended Partition which carries out OS installation.

Please release of VGA/USB2 to the Extended Partition after installation of OS, driver and tool.

Before installing the OS, assign a VGA/USB2 temporarily to the relevant extended partition.
 In the case of the extended partition which is not assigned a VGA, the serial interface is required.
 Fixed as follows:

Example

In case of RHEL7

1. Change setting file

Add "console = ttyS0, 115200" in the GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX of /etc/default/grub

- 2. Reflect changes
 - In case of UEFI boot
 - Execute "grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/efi/EFI/redhat/grub.cfg" command.
 - In case of Legacy boot

Execute "grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/grub2/grub.cfg" command.

In case of RHEL6

- Comment out the line of splashimage = (hd0, 1) / grub / splash.xpm.gz in /etc/grub.conf
- Added "console = ttyS0, 19200n8" in the kernel line of /etc/grub.conf" in /etc/grub.conf
- In case of RHEL7.1 or RHEL6.6, set "udevtimeout = 3600" to kernel option. If the kernel option was not set, boot time
 of the Extended Partition with LAN device might extended for ten minutes or more compared with the time that was
 been set.
- Don't set "notsc" or "clocksource=hpet" kernel option in RHEL7.1 and RHEL6.6.
- When the OS starts "Fast TSC calibration failed" appears in RHEL message.
- This message is output when access performance to the PIT (Programmable Interval Timer) is less than the expected value in TSC (Time Stamp Counter) adjustment process of OS boot. This cause is virtualization overhead of PIT, which is performed by the Extended Partitioning Firmware. But in this case, the system does not be affected because the OS switches automatically to the HPET (High Precision Event Timer).
- During booting of RHEL6.6, the messages of "irq NN: nobody cared (try booting with the "irqpoll" option)" and "Disabling IRQ #NN" may be logged. But if NN is from 16 to 19, these messages have no impact to OS's operation.
- Legacy boot from Emulex Single Port Fibre Channel Card or Dual Port Fibre Channel Card are not supported in Extended Partition. The boot from these cards is supported only in UEFI mode.
- If FC Card in PCI_Box is used, installation the module which matches firmware version in hot-plug operation is needed. Get the module in following URL and install the module after OS installation. http://support.ts.fujitsu.com/Download/Index.asp
- Don't redirect kdump to the remote host via Extended Socket. Please use the host which is not routed through Extended Socket.
- In case of RHEL7.1 and RHEL7.2, Check that Extended Socket Driver is installed for using Extended Socket function.
 Execute following command after OS installation. RHEL7.3 and later does not need this confirmation.
 rpm -qa | grep fjexsock

If "kmod-fjexsock-X (X depends on OS or Driver version)" is not displayed, the driver is not installed. Download the driver from following URL and install the driver.

http://support.ts.fujitsu.com/Download/Index.asp

- -> Fujitsu Server PRIMEQUEST
- -> PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series
- -> PRIMEQUEST 2400E3/2800E3/2400E2/2800E2/2400E/2800E
- -> Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server
- -> Red Hat Enterprise Linux7 (X86_64)
- -> Device Driver
- -> RHDUP driver package fjexsock for RHELX.X
- When personality configuration of CNA card or LAN card is changed in BIOS menu, the change is not reflected by rebooting Extended Partition. To reflect the change, reset Physical Partition or change personality configuration on Physical Partition.
- Memory size may be insufficient for kdump execution when Extended Socket is enabled. In this case, please adjust crashkernel parameter in accordance with Linux User's Manual.
- Please use kernel revision of 3.10.0-327.10.1.el7 or later for RHEL7.2.
- If you use hardware RAID, errors like "Adapter PRAID EP 420x: Controller encountered a fatal error and was reset" may be registered at OS startup, however there is no operational problem.
- When activating the RAID software license from ServerViewRAID Manager, turn off / on the physical partition instead of rebooting the extended partition after entering the activation key.

4.3 Procedure to install Windows in SAN/iSCSI storage device

Here explains the procedure to install Windows in SAN storage device. Start the installation after confirming the MMB configuration setting and successful login to the MMB.

4.3.1 Presetting

The following settings are done if necessary.

- 1. LUN of SAN storage device is set.
- 2. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.
 - For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
 - For the Legacy Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- 3. BIOS is set to recognize LUN of FC card.

For the settings of FC card, Converged Network Adapter and NIC for iSCSI Boot, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.

- 4. The partition settings in MMB are confirmed after the internal HDD/SDD of PRIMEQUEST is removed.
 - SB/IOU configuration is set

See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"

- Console redirection is set

See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"

- Video redirection: Enable
- Virtual media: Enable
- Various modes are set

See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"

 Only LUN which becomes the installation target of SAN storage device is connected to the partition of PRIMEQUEST.

For the settings of SAN storage device, see "Attached manual in the SAN storage device".

 I/O space is allocated in PCI Cards. For the allocation of I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" in this document and "3.4.4.2 I/O Space Assignment Configuration" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.3.2 Preparation for installation

The following preparations are done.

- The following disk images should be prepared. Media of Windows operating system
- 2. FC cable is made a single path (Connection of only 1 FC cable).

4.3.3 Installation of operating system

Operating system installation by SVIM is explained.

There are the following types in the operating system installation by SVIM. For the detailed procedure of the respective modes, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

TABLE 4.1 Operating system	installation by SVIM
----------------------------	----------------------

Mode	Function Overview	Objective
Quick	The operating system can be installed in the state recommended by	This mode is used when
Mode	Fujitsu by only executing the required minimum settings.	operating system is easily
		installed.
Guide	It is set according to wizard set up information. The information that was	This mode is used for
Mode	set, is saved in a configuration file and can be used at the time of re-	advanced setting of RAID and
	install	operating system.

All the inserted windows are examples of display and the contents displayed by the system configuration, etc. are different.

Operations

- Make the settings by which the ServerView Suite DVD is booted from the virtual media for the partition. For settings, see"1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition. Notes

The UEFI boots or the Legacy boots can be selected in the following procedure.

- a. Select [Force boot into EFI Boot Manager] in MMB Web-UI.
- b. Turn on the power supply of partition
- c. The menu is selected in the following order by the Boot Manger front page. [Boot Maintenance Manager]- [Boot Options]- [Change Boot Order]- [Change the order]
- d. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For the Boot order setting method, see "■ Change of priority level (Change Boot Order)" of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- e. Select [Commit Changes and Exit].
- f. Return to the front page pushing the escape key twice.
- g. Select [Boot Manager].
- For UEFI aware OS, select UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx.
 For Legacy OS, select Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx.

Warning

In the case of installation to SAN storage device, make sure to select CDROM from [BootManager] manually and boot SVIM. If you boot SVIM from CDROM by Reset or Partition OFF/ON automatically, SAN storage is not detected.

- 3. Windows Boot Manager is displayed. Select the first menu in Windows Boot Manager.
- 4. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed. In case of English, select "English".
- 5. Click the "Next" button without setting anything on the initial display window.
- 6. [Deployment] is selected by the [To Welcome ServerView Installation Manager].
- Installation mode is selected, operating system to be installed is selected and the operating system is set. Remark

IP address of LAN cannot be set by the setting of operating system. Set the IP address after operating system installation.

8. Click "Installation start-up".

The installation starts.

9. It is replaced to the installation medium of operating system according to the SVIM instruction.

4.3.4 Bundled software setting after installation is completed

Bundled software is set after the completion of operating system installation.

- 1. OneCommand Manager is installed in the following cases.
 - When the Emulex FC card or Converged Network Adapter Card is mounted. And
 - When OneCommandManager is not installed
 - The installation condition of OneCommandManager is determined by the presence of [Emulex] [OneCommand Manager] under the [start] menu [all programs].

Note

In Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows Server 2012, "the [start] menu – [all programs]" should read "the [start] menu – [all apps]".

a. Driver/Utility of FC Card is downloaded from the following URL.

http://support.ts.fujitsu.com/

Note

Driver/ Utility can be used by the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series though PRIMERGY is described in the downloaded binary.

b. The downloaded file is executed by a double click.

The prompt window of cmd.exe (black window) is displayed for a while and the file is extracted.

c. The window closes automatically after the extraction is completed.

The download file is extracted and folder or file is newly created.

Remark

If the window does not close even if "Complete" is displayed on the title bar of the window then click the "Close" button and close the window.

Double click and execute "elxocm-windows-x86-XXXXX.exe" (in case of x86, 32-bit OS) or "elxocm-windows-x64-XXXXX.exe" (in case of x64, 64-bit OS) in "FC_vXXXXXX" directory created by extraction.

Remark

"XXXX" shows the version number. Read properly.

- 2. Qlogic Converge Console (GUI/CLI) is installed in the following cases.
 - When the Qlogic FC card is mounted.

And

- When Qlogic Converge Console (GUI/CLI) is not installed

The installation condition of Qlogic Converge Console (GUI) is determined by the presence of [Qlogic Corporation] – [QCC GUI (localhost)] or [QCC GUI(127.0.0.1)] under the [start] menu – [all programs]

The installation condition of Qlogic Converge Console (CLI) is determined by the presence of [Qlogic Management Suite] -[QConvergeConsole CLI] under the [start] menu – [all programs]

Note

In Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows Server 2012, "the [start] menu – [all programs]" should read "the [start] menu – [all apps]".

a. Driver/ Utility of FC Card is downloaded from the following URL. http://support.ts.fujitsu.com/

Note

Driver/Utility can be used by the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series though PRIMERGY is described in the downloaded binary.

b. The downloaded file is executed by a double click.

The prompt window of cmd.exe (black window) is displayed for a while and the file is extracted.

c. The window closes automatically after the extraction is completed.

The download file is extracted and folder or file is newly created.

Remark

If the window does not close even if "Complete" is displayed on the title bar of the window then click the "Close" button and close the window.

d. Double click and execute "QConvergeConsole_Installer_Windows_XXXXX.exe" in "QCC_vXXXXXX" directory created by extraction.

Remark

"XXXX" shows the version number. Read properly.

- 3. When the installation is completed, the partition is rebooted.
- 4. The setting of management LAN is confirmed.

Confirm STP function for switch is turned off if the switch is connected to management LAN for MMB.

5. The trap destination and mail destination are set through MMB.

Execute the coordination with the management software, etc. only if necessary.

- a. [SNMP settings] is displayed on the MMB window and enable [SNMP].
- b. The trap destination of SNMP through MMB is set.
 - "6.5.2 Set up of SNMP"
- 6. Dump area is set.

Confirm that there is sufficient free space on the hard disk before acquiring the memory damp. For details, see "11.4.3 Settings of dump environment (Windows)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

- The management information and configuration information are stored. For details, see "5.7 Saving management and configuration information".
- 8. UPS battery monitor is set.

When the duration of life of the UPS battery is monitored: see "Setting for component replacement alert for PRIMEQUEST". This document is downloaded from the following URL.

http://www.fujitsu.com/global/products/computing/servers/mission-critical/primequest/documents/manuals/

 Watchdog Timer allows reboot OS in case that OS freezes. Rebooting OS is executed when the set time passes, For details, see "8.4 Automatic Partition Restart Conditions" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

4.3.5 Connection of SAN and the internal HDD/SDD after installation

For SAN and the internal HDD/SDD connection after the completion of installation, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.

- Change and confirm the settings of the detailed information of the FC card.
 For details, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.
- OneCommand Manager is started. The following driver parameters are set.
 For the details of the set value, see San storage device manual.
 - Topology
 - Queue Depth
 - Queue Target
 - Link Speed
- 3. Check the registry information.

For details on the checking method, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Creation Manual. For details on setting value, see Manual of SAN storage device.

- TimeOutValue

4.4 Procedures to install Windows into internal HDD/SSD

This section briefly describes the procedures by which Windows is installed in the internal HDD/SSD. Start the installation after checking the MMB configuration and successful to log in to the MMB.

4.4.1 Presetting

If necessary, the following settings are done.

- 1. Remove each built-in HDD that is not the installation destination.
- 2. The setting of partition is checked by MMB.
 - Setting of configuration of SB/IOU See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"
 - Setting of Console Redirection

See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"

- Video redirection: Enable
- Virtual media: Enable
- Setting of various modes
 - See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"
- 3. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.

- For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
- For the Legacy Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- The I/O space is allocated in the SAS card and in the SAS RAID controller card. For details on allocation of I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" and [Configure I/O Space Assignment] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.4.2 Preparations for installation

The following preparations are done.

- 1. The following disk images are prepared. Media of Windows operating system
- 2. Remove all FC cables.
- 3. Mount the following disk image by connecting the video redirection.
- Change the boot order, and set DVD Boot to the top priority of the starting order.
 For details, see "1.3.1 [Power Control] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.4.3 Installation of operating system

This section explains the installation of operating system using SVIM.

There are the following types of operating system installations using SVIM.

For the detailed procedures of each mode, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

Mode	Functional Overview	Purpose
Quick	You can simply use the minimum settings necessary for operating	For easy installation.
mode	system installation. This mode uses Fujitsu's recommended settings.	
Guide	You can specify setup information by following the instructions of the	For detailed setting of RAID or
mode	wizard. You can save the specified information in a configuration file for	OS.
	use during reinstallation.	

TABLE 4.2 Operating System Installation using SVIM

All the screenshots are the display examples. Contents displayed may differ depending on system configuration.

Operations

- If setting is done, you can boot the ServerView Suite DVD from virtual media for the partition. For details on configuration, see"1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition. Note

It can be started by selecting "Force boot from DVD" by Boot Selector in MMB Web-UI or it can be started from the virtual media by changing the boot order to DVD by UEFI. If it is started by selecting "Force boot from DVD" by Boot

Selector in MMB Web-UI it is started in Legacy mode.

When operating system corresponds to the UEFI mode, the installation can be done in UEFI mode by changing the boot order according to the following procedure.

- a. After turning on the power supply of the partition, while the FUJITSU logo is displayed, press any key (such as [Space] key) except [Enter] key and the Boot Manager front page is displayed.
- b. The menu is selected on the Boot Manager front page in the following order. [Boot Maintenance Manager]-[Boot Options]-[Change Boot Order]-[Change the order]
- c. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For details on the setting method of boot order, see "■ Change Boot Order of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- d. [Commit Changes and Exit] [Reset System] is specified and the partition is rebooted.
- 3. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed. In case of English, select "English".
- 4. In initial display window, click the [Next] button as follows without setting anything.
- 5. Select [Deployment] on the [To Welcome ServerView Installation Manager] window.
- 6. Select the installation mode and the operating system to be installed and set the operating system.

Remark

The IP address of LAN cannot be set in the setting of operating system. Set the IP address after installing the operating system.

7. Click [Installation Start].

The installation is started.

8. Replace with the installation medium of the operating system according to the instructions of SVIM.

4.4.4 Setting the bundled software after completion of installation

After completion of operating system installation, set the bundled software.

- 1. Install OneCommand Manager in the following cases.
 - When the Emulex FC card or Converged Network Adapter Card is mounted

and

- When the OneCommand Manager is not installed.

It can be judged whether [Emulex] -[OneCommand Manager] exist under [Start] menu-[All programs] in the installation status of OneCommand Manager.

Note

In Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows Server 2012, "the [start] menu – [all programs]" should read "the [start] menu – [all apps]".

a. Download the driver/utility of FC card or Converged Network Adapter Card from the following URL. http://support.ts.fujitsu.com/

Note:

The driver/utility can be used in the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series though PRIMERGY is described in the downloaded binary.

b. Double click the downloaded file and execute it.

The prompt screen of cmd.exe (black window) is displayed for a while and the file is extracted.

c. The window is closed automatically when the extraction is completed.

The downloaded file is uncompressed, and the folder or the file is created newly.

Remark

When the window is not closed even if displayed as [Complete] in the title bar of the window, click the [Close] button and close the window.

d. Double-click the " elxocm-windows-x86-XXXXX.exe"(in case of x86, 32-bit OS) or "elxocm-windows-x64-XXXXX.exe"(in case of x64, 64-bit OS) in the "FC_vXXXXXX" directory created in the decompression, and execute it.

Remark

"XXXXX" shows the version number. Read it in different way properly.

- 2. Qlogic Converge Console (GUI/CLI) is installed in the following cases.
 - When the Qlogic FC card is mounted.

and

- When Qlogic Converge Console (GUI/CLI) is not installed

The installation condition of Qlogic Converge Console (GUI) is determined by the presence of [Qlogic Corporation] – [QCC GUI(localhost)] or [QCC GUI(127.0.0.1)] under the [start] menu – [all programs]
The installation condition of Qlogic Converge Console (CLI) is determined by the presence of [Qlogic

Management Suite] -[QConvergeConsole CLI] under the [start] menu - [all programs]

Note

In Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows Server 2012, "the [start] menu – [all programs]" should read "the [start] menu – [all apps]".

a. Driver/ Utility of FC Card is downloaded from the following URL.

http://support.ts.fujitsu.com/

Note

Driver/Utility can be used by the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series though PRIMERGY is described in the downloaded binary.

b. The downloaded file is executed by a double click.

The prompt window of cmd.exe (black window) is displayed for a while and the file is extracted.

c. The window closes automatically after the extraction is completed.

The download file is extracted and folder or file is newly created.

Remark

If the window does not close even if "Complete" is displayed on the title bar of the window then click the "Close" button and close the window.

d. Double click and execute "QConvergeConsole_Installer_Windows_XXXXX.exe" in "QCC_vXXXXXX" directory created by extraction.

Remark

"XXXX" shows the version number. Read properly.

- 3. When the installation is completed, reboot the partition.
- 4. Check the setting of management LAN.

The STP function of the port to be connected is turned OFF when the management LAN is used for communication with MMB in the switching hub which supports the STP function.

5. Set the trap destination and Mail Sending destination through MMB.

Execute linkage with the operation management software only if necessary.

a. The [SNMP setting] is displayed on the MMB screen, and enable the SNMP.

- b. The trap destination of SNMP is set through MMB. See "6.5.2 Set up of SNMP"
- 6. Set the dump area.

Check whether there is sufficient free space in the hard disk before acquiring the memory dump. For details, see ("11.4.4 Setting (Windows) of dump environment" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

- 7. Save the management information and configuration information. For details, see "5.7 Saving management and configuration information".
- 8. UPS battery monitor is set.

When the duration of life of the UPS battery is monitored: see "Setting for component replacement alert for PRIMEQUEST". This document is downloaded from the following URL.

http://www.fujitsu.com/global/products/computing/servers/mission-critical/primequest/documents/manuals/

 Watchdog Timer allows reboot OS in case that OS freezes. Rebooting OS is executed when the set time passes, For details, see "8.4 Automatic Partition Restart Conditions" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

4.4.5 After Installation, Connection between SAN and internal HDD/SSD

For SAN and the internal HDD/SDD connection after the completion of installation, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.

- Change and confirm the settings of the detailed information of the FC card.
 For details, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.
- 2. OneCommand Manager is started. The following driver parameters are set.
 - For the details of the set value, see San storage device manual.
 - Topology
 - Queue Depth
 - Queue Target
 - Link Speed
- 3. Check the registry information.

For details on the checking method, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Creation Manual. For details on setting value, see Manual of SAN storage device.

- TimeOutValue

4.5 Procedures to install RHEL in SAN storage device

This section describes the procedure to install RHEL in SAN storage device. Start the installation after confirming the MMB configuration and successful to log in to the MMB.

4.5.1 Presetting

Set the following if necessary.

- 1. Set the LUN of the SAN storage device.
- 2. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.
 - For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
 - For the Legacy Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- Set the BIOS to recognize LUN of the FC card, Converged Network Adapter and NIC for iSCSI Boot.
 For setting the FC card, Converged Network Adapter and NIC for iSCSI Boot, see "Chapter 2 Setting of fiber channel card (FC card)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.
- 4. Check the setting of the partition by MMB after removing the internal HDD/SSD of PRIMEQUEST.
 - SB/IOU configuration is set
 - See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"
 - Console redirection is set
 - See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"
 - Video redirection: Enable
 - Virtual media: Enable
 - Various modes are set
 - See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"
- Connect only the LUN which installs the SAN storage device to the partition of PRIMEQUEST.
 For the setting of SAN storage device, see the manual attached with the SAN storage device.
- Allocate the I/O space in the FC card for boot path and in the SAS RAID controller card. For details on allocation of the I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" and "3.4.4.2 I/O Space Assignment Configuration" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.5.2 Preparation for installation

No RHEL distribution DVD is available for RHEL installation. Users who have purchased a RHEL subscription will need to create a RHEL distribution DVD.

Customer Portal :

https://access.redhat.com/home

Create an image of the RHEL distribution DVD.

Creation of RHEL installation DVD image

The image file of distribution DVD is downloaded by log in to the customer portal (<u>https://access.redhat.com/</u>) of Red Hat Company in other systems.

Note

The image file of distribution DVD is different for the minor release and each architecture (for Intel64). Download the targeted DVD image file.

Remark

The subscription registration to the customer portal of the Red Hat Company is required to download the file.

Preparation for boot

The FC cable is made single path (connect only one FC cable).

4.5.3 Execution of installation

The operating system installation with SVIM is explained.

There are the following types for operating system installation with SVIM. For the detailed procedure of each mode, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

TABLE 4.3 Operating system installation with SVIM

Mode	Functional Overview	Purpose
Quick mode	The operating system can be installed with the recommendation	It is used when the operating system is
	of Fujitsu only by setting minimum required limits.	to be readily installed.
Guide mode	The setup information is set following the wizard. The	It is used when the details of RAID and
	information which is set is saved in the configuration file, and it	the operating system are set.
	can be used during reinstallation.	

Operations

- The settings are done to boot the ServerView Suite DVD from virtual media for the partition. For details on configuration, see"1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition. Note:

The UEFI boots or the Legacy boots can be selected in the following procedure.

- a. Select [Force boot into EFI Boot Manager] in MMB Web-UI.
- b. Turn on the power supply of the partition.
- c. The menu is selected on the Boot Manager front page in the following order. [Boot Maintenance Manager]-[Boot Options]-[Change Boot Order]-[Change the order]
- d. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For details on the setting method of boot order, see "■ Change Boot Order of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- e. Select [Commit Changes and Exit].
- f. Return to the front page pushing the escape key twice.
- g. Select [Boot Manager].

h. For UEFI aware OS, select UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx.

For Legacy OS, select Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx.

Warning

In the case of installation to SAN storage device, make sure to select CDROM from [BootManager] manually and boot SVIM. If you boot SVIM from CDROM by Reset or Partition OFF/ON automatically, SAN storage is not detected.

- 3. Windows Boot Manager is displayed. Select the first menu in Windows Boot Manager.
- 4. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed.

In case of English, select "English".

- 5. In initial display window, click [Next] button without setting anything.
- Select [Deployment] in [Welcome ServerView Installation Manager] window. 6.
- 7. Select installation mode, select operating system to be installed and set the operating system.

Warning

If you select Guide mode in the environment where Dynamic Reconfiguration will be used, do not select [Minimum Install] on [Package Selection] window. Dynamic Reconfiguration cannot operate properly. Remark

The IP address of LAN cannot be set in setting operating system. Set IP address after installing the operation system.

- 8. Click [Start installation]. The installation is started.
- 9. Replace with the installation medium of operating system according to the instructions of SVIM.

4.5.4 Configuring Bundled Software after Installation

Bundled software is configured after installing the operating system.

1. The trap destination from the partition is configured.

Remark

Configuring of the trap destination can be checked by using standard trap for SNMP service. For details, see "6.5.2 Set up of SNMP".

2. The trap destination and Mail destination through MMB are configured.

In linkage with operations management software, it is configured only if necessary.

- Configuring SNMP trap destination through MMB

See "6.5.2 Set up of SNMP"

- The report destination and the filter are set when Alarm E-Mail is configured.

See "3.3.9 Set up of Alarm E-Mail"

- 3. OneCommand Manager is installed while installing FC card.
 - a. By executing the following command, the libnl package information is displayed. Confirm that libnl is installed.

rpm -qi libnl
If libnl is not installed, search libnl package in installation media of distribution, and install libnl package by
executing the following command.
<pre># rpm -ivh libnl-<version>-<release>.<arch>.rpm</arch></release></version></pre>
 Remark

Read the part of <version>, <release>, <arch> properly.

b. Download the driver/utility of FC Card from the following URL.

http://support.ts.fujitsu.com/Download/Index.asp

Note

Though PRIMERGY is described in the downloaded binary, driver/utility can be used by the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series.

c. The file to be downloaded is copied in an arbitrary directory of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series and then extracted.

tar xvzf F1010350.tar.gz

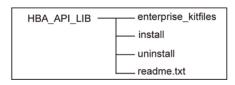
d. The file given below is extracted.

Remark

For the method of installing "SNIA HBA API library", see readme.txt extracted under HBA_API_LIB.

e. Reboot the partition after installation.

FIGURE 4.1 File Structure



4. The dump area is configured.

Confirm that hard disk has enough free space before collecting the memory dump. After OS installation, do a setting of kdump as following: a. Change the setting of Grub's parameter "crashkernel" to value which match the customer environment (256M is standard).

(example)

Edit the file "/etc/grub.conf" as following:

default=0
timeout=5
splashimage=(hd0,0)/grub/splash.xpm.gz
hiddenmenu
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server (<kernel revision="">.x86_64)</kernel>
root (hd0,0)
kernel /vmlinuz- <kernel revision="">.x86_64 ro root=UUID=xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx</kernel>
rd_NO_LUKS LANG=ja_JP.UTF-8 rd_NO_MD SYSFONT=latarcyrhebsun16 KEYBOARDTYPE=pc
KEYTABLE=jp106
rd_NO_LVM rd_NO_DM crashkernel=256M
initrd /initramfs- <kernel revision="">.x86_64.img</kernel>

- b. Change setting of kdump to work with small memory
 - Case of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.4
 Add setting of cp command to core_collector of /etc/kdump.conf file
 Edit the file "/etc/kdump.conf" as following:

core_collector cp --sparse=always

extra_bins /bin/cp

[Note] makedumpfile command cannot be used for core_collector because the command uses big memory and system may run out of memory.

- Case of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5

Any changes is not needed for core_collector

[Note] RHEL6.5 improves memory usage of the makedumpfile command.

- c. Reboot
- 5. Save the management information and configuration.

For details, see "5.7 Saving management and configuration information".

- UPS battery monitor is set.
 When the duration of life of the UPS battery is monitored: see "Setting for component replacement alert for PRIMEQUEST ". This document is downloaded from the following URL. http://www.fujitsu.com/global/products/computing/servers/mission-critical/primequest/documents/manuals/
- Watchdog Timer allows reboot OS in case that OS freezes. Rebooting OS is executed when the set time passes. For details, see "8.4 Automatic Partition Restart Conditions" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

4.5.5 After installation, connecting SAN and internal HDD/SSD

See PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual , for connecting SAN with internal HDD/SSD, after installation.

Moreover, for details on driver parameter, see readme of the driver supplied.

4.6 Procedure to install RHEL into internal HDD/SSD

This section briefly describes the procedure to install RHEL into internal HDD/SSD. Start the installation after confirming the MMB configuration and successful to log in to the MMB.

4.6.1 Presetting

If necessary, the following settings are done.

- 1. Remove each internal HDD that is not the installation destination.
- 2. The setting of partition is checked by MMB.
 - Setting of configuration of SB/IOU
 - See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"
 - Setting of Console Redirection
 - See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"
 - Video redirection: Enable
 - Virtual media: Enable
 - Setting of various modes
 - See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"
- 3. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.
 - For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
 - For the Legacy Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- The I/O space is allocated in the SAS card and in the SAS RAID controller card.
 For details on allocation of I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" in this document and "3.4.4.2I/O Space Assignment Configuration" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.6.2 Preparing for Installation

As distribution DVD of RHEL is not provided beforehand while installing RHEL, the user who has subscribed the RHEL must create the DVD by himself.

Creating the RHEL Distribution DVD Image

Download the image file of distribution DVD by logging in to customer portal (<u>https://access.redhat.com/</u>) of Red Hat, Inc. by using other system.

Note

The image file of the distribution DVD differs with respect of the minor release and architecture (for Intel64). Therefore, download the intended DVD image file.

Remark

It is necessary to register in the customer portal of Red Hat, Inc. for subscription before downloading the file.

Preparing for Boot

All FC cables are removed.

4.6.3 Installation

The operating system installation with SVIM is explained.

There are the following types for operating system installation with SVIM. For the detailed procedure of each mode, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

TABLE 4.4 Operating system installation with SVIM

Mode	Functional Overview	Purpose
Quick mode	You can simply use the minimum settings necessary for operating system installation. This mode uses Fujitsu's recommended settings.	For easy installation.
Guide mode	You can specify setup information by following the instructions of the wizard. You can save the specified information in a configuration file for use during reinstallation.	For detailed setting of RAID or OS.

Operations

- The settings are done to boot the ServerView Suite DVD from virtual media for the partition. For details on configuration, see "1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition. Note:

It can be started by selecting "Force boot from DVD" by Boot Selector in MMB Web-UI or it can be started from the virtual media by changing the boot order to DVD by UEFI. If it is started by selecting "Force boot from DVD" by Boot Selector in MMB Web-UI it is started in Legacy mode.

When operating system corresponds to the UEFI mode, the installation can be done in UEFI mode by changing the boot order according to the following procedure.

- a. After turning on the power supply of the partition, while the FUJITSU logo is displayed, press any key (such as [Space] key) except [Enter] key and the Boot Manager front page is displayed.
- b. The menu is selected on the Boot Manager front page in the following order. [Boot Maintenance Manager]-[Boot Options]-[Change Boot Order]-[Change the order]
- c. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For details on the setting method of boot order, see "■ Change Boot Order of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- d. [Commit Changes and Exit] [Reset System] is specified and the partition is rebooted.

- 3. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed. In case of English, select "English".
- 4. In initial display window, click [Next] button without setting anything.
- 5. Select [Deployment] in [Welcome ServerView Installation Manager] window.
- 6. Select installation mode, select operating system to be installed and set the operating system.

Warning

If you select Guide mode in the environment where Dynamic Reconfiguration will be used, do not select [Minimum Install] on [Package Selection] window. Dynamic Reconfiguration cannot operate properly.

Remark

The IP address of LAN cannot be set in setting operating system. Set IP address after installing the operation system.

7. Click [Start installation].

The installation is started.

8. Replace with the installation medium of operating system according to the instructions of SVIM.

4.6.4 Configuring Bundled Software after Installation

Bundled software is configured after installing the operating system.

8. The trap destination from the partition is configured.

Remark

Configuring of the trap destination can be checked by using standard trap for SNMP service. For details, see "6.5.2 Configuring SNMP".

- 9. The trap destination and Mail destination through MMB are configured.
 - In linkage with operations management software, it is configured only if necessary.
 - Configuring SNMP trap destination through MMB
 - See "6.5.2 Set up of SNMP"
 - The report destination and the filter are set when Alarm E-Mail is configured. See "3.3.9 Set up of Alarm E-Mail"
- 10. OneCommand Manager is installed while installing FC card.
 - a. By executing the following command, the libnl package information is displayed. Confirm that libnl is installed.

# rpm -qi libnl			
If libnl is not installed, search libnl package in installation media of distribution, and install libnl package by			
exe	executing the following command.		
# rpm -ivh libr	nl- <version>-<release>.<arch>.rpm</arch></release></version>		
Re	mark		
Re	ead the part of <version>, <release>, <arch> properly.</arch></release></version>		
b. Do	wnload the driver/utility of FC Card from the following URL.		
<u>httr</u>	p://support.ts.fujitsu.com/		
No	te		
The	ough PRIMERGY is described in the downloaded binary, driver/utility can be used by the PRIMEQUEST		
200	00 series.		
c. The	e file to be downloaded is copied in an arbitrary directory of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series and then		
ext	tracted.		

tar xvzf F1010350.tar.gz

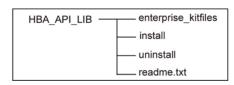
d. The file given below is extracted.

Remark

For the method of installing "SNIA HBA API library", see readme.txt extracted under HBA_API_LIB.

e. Reboot the partition after installation.

FIGURE 4.2 File Structure



11. The dump area is configured.

Confirm that hard disk has enough free space before collecting the memory dump.

After OS installation, do a setting of kdump as following:

a. Change the setting of Grub's parameter "crashkernel" to value which match the customer environment (256M is standard)..

(example)

Edit the file "/etc/grub.conf" as following:

default=0
timeout=5
splashimage=(hd0,0)/grub/splash.xpm.gz
hiddenmenu
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server (<kernel revision="">.x86_64)</kernel>
root (hd0,0)
kernel /vmlinuz- <kernel revision="">.x86_64 ro root=UUID=xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx</kernel>
rd_NO_LUKS LANG=ja_JP.UTF-8 rd_NO_MD SYSFONT=latarcyrhebsun16 KEYBOARDTYPE=pc KEYTABLE=jp106
rd_NO_LVM rd_NO_DM crashkernel=256M
initrd /initramfs- <kernel revision="">.x86_64.img</kernel>

- b. Change setting of kdump to work with small memory
 - Case of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.4
 - Add setting of cp command to core_collector of /etc/kdump.conf file

Edit the file "/etc/kdump.conf" as following:

core_collector cp --sparse=always

extra_bins /bin/cp

[Note] makedumpfile command cannot be used for core_collector because the command uses big memory and system may run out of memory.

- Case of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.5
- Any changes is not needed for core_collector

[Note] RHEL6.5 improves memory usage of the makedumpfile command.

c. Reboot

12. NTP client is configured.

NTP server on the operating system side is configured. For details, see "5.6 Setup of NTP client".

- Save the management information and configuration.
 For details, see "5.7 Saving management and configuration information".
- 14. UPS battery monitor is set. When the duration of life of the UPS battery is monitored: see "Setting for component replacement alert for PRIMEQUEST ". This document is downloaded from the following URL. http://www.fujitsu.com/global/products/computing/servers/mission-critical/primequest/documents/manuals/
- Watchdog Timer allows reboot OS in case that OS freezes. Rebooting OS is executed when the set time passes. For details, see "8.4 Automatic Partition Restart Conditions" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

4.6.5 After installation, connecting SAN with internal HDD/SSD

See PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual, for connecting SAN with internal HDD/SSD, after installation. Moreover, for details on driver parameter, see readme of the driver supplied.

4.7 Procedure to install VMware on the SAN storage device

This section briefly describes the procedure by which VMware is installed on the SAN storage device. Start the installation after confirming the MMB configuration and successful to log in to the MMB.

4.7.1 Presetting

Set the following if necessary.

- 1. Set the LUN of the SAN storage device.
- 2. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.
 - For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
 - For the Legacy Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- 3. Set the BIOS to recognize LUN of the FC card, Converged Network Adapter and NIC for iSCSI Boot. For setting the FC card, see "Chapter 2 Setting of fiber channel card (FC card)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN
 - Boot Environment Configuration Manual.
- 4. Check the setting of the partition by MMB after removing the internal HDD/SSD of PRIMEQUEST.
 - SB/IOU configuration is set
 - See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"
 - Console redirection is set
 - See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"
 - Video redirection: Enable
 - Virtual media: Enable
 - Various modes are set

See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"

5. Connect only the LUN which installs the SAN storage device to the partition of PRIMEQUEST.

For the setting of SAN storage device, see the manual attached with the SAN storage device.

6. Allocate the I/O space in the FC card for boot path and in the SAS RAID controller card.

For details on allocation of the I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" in this document and "3.4.4.2 I/O Space Assignment Configuration" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

7. Set PCI Address Mode to PCI Bus Mode by MMB Web-UI.

For details on PCI Address Mode setting, see "1.3.9 [Partition#x] Menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference Manual (CA92344-0539).

Remark

In case of VMware5.x, be sure to set PCI Address Mode to PCI Bus Mode.

In case of using of Vt-d function in VMware6.x, be sure to set PCI Address Mode to PCI Bus Mode.

4.7.2 Preparation of installation

Additionally, see the VMware information, at the time of preparation of the installation. For the VMware information, contact the distributor where you purchased your product, or your sales representative.

The following preparation is done just before the installation.

 The following disk image is prepared. Media of VMware

2. The FC cable is made a single path (wire connection of only 1 FC cable).

4.7.3 Installation of VMware

The operating system installation with SVIM is explained.

There are the following types for operating system installation with SVIM. For the detailed procedure of each mode, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

TABLE 4.5 Operating system in:	stallation with SVIM
--------------------------------	----------------------

Mode	Functional Overview	Purpose
Quick mode	You can simply use the minimum settings necessary for operating system installation. This mode uses Fujitsu's recommended settings.	For easy installation.
Guide mode	You can specify setup information by following the instructions of the wizard. You can save the specified information in a configuration file for use during reinstallation.	For detailed setting of RAID or OS.

Operations

- The settings are done to boot the ServerView Suite DVD from virtual media for the partition. For details on configuration, see "1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- 2. Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition..

Note:

The UEFI boots or the Legacy boots can be selected in the following procedure.

- a. Select [Force boot into EFI Boot Manager] in MMB Web-UI.
- b. Turn on the power supply of the partition
- c. The menu is selected on the Boot Manager front page in the following order. [Boot Maintenance Manager]-[Boot Options]-[Change Boot Order]-[Change the order]
- d. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For details on the setting method of boot order, see "■ Change Boot Order of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- e. Select [Commit Changes and Exit]
- f. Return to the front page pushing the escape key twice.
- g. Select [Boot Manager].
- h. For UEFI aware OS, select UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx.

For Legacy OS, select Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx.

Warning

In the case of installation to SAN storage device, make sure to select CDROM from [BootManager] manually and boot SVIM. If you boot SVIM from CDROM by Reset or Partition OFF/ON automatically, SAN storage is not detected.

3. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed.

In case of English, select "English".

- 4. In initial display window, click [Next] button without setting anything.
- 5. Select [Deployment] in [Welcome ServerView Installation Manager] window.
- 6. Select installation mode, select operating system to be installed and set the operating system.

Remark

The IP address of LAN cannot be set in setting operating system. Set IP address after installing the operation system.

- Click [Start installation].
 The installation is started.
- 8. Replace with the installation medium of operating system according to the instructions of SVIM.

4.7.4 Setting of Software Watchdog.

Watchdog Timer allows reboot OS in case that OS freezes. Rebooting OS is executed when the set time passes, For details, see "8.4 Automatic Partition Restart Conditions" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

4.7.5 VMware Installation completion.

Reboot the partition of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series when the setting is completed.

Warning

In the case of installation of VMware ESXi 5.x or ESXi 6.x in UEFI mode, you have to make and register new boot manager because boot option which is made in installation cannot boot OS automatically. See (12) [PRIMEQUEST 2000/1000 Series] of "7. Notes on ServerView Installation Manager (SVIM) (V11.15.01)" in FUJITSU Server PRIMEQUEST 2000/1000 Series Notes on ServerView Suite(CA92344-0679)

4.7.6 Installation of Bundled Software

For details on bundled software, see [D.2 Installing VMware Bundled Software]

4.8 Procedure to install VMware into internal HDD/SSD

This section describes the procedure of installing internal HDD/SSD for VMware. Start the installation after confirming the MMB configuration and successful to log in to the MMB.

4.8.1 Presetting

Set the following if necessary.

- 1. Check the partition settings in the MMB after removing internal HDD/SSD of PRIMEQUEST
 - Setting of configuration of SB/IOU
 - See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"
 - Setting of Console Redirection
 - See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"
 - Video redirection: Enable
 - Virtual media: Enable
 - Setting of various modes
 - See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"
- 2. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.
 - For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
 - - For the Legacy Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- 3. The I/O space is allocated in the SAS card and in the SAS RAID controller card.

For details on allocation of I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" in this document and [Configure I/O Space Assignment] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4. Set PCI Address Mode to PCI Bus Mode through MMB Web-UI.

For details on PCI Address Mode setting, see "1.3.9 [Partition#x] Menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference Manual (CA92344-0539).

Remark

In case of VMware5.x, be sure to set PCI Address Mode to PCI Bus Mode.

In case of using of Vt-d function in VMware6.x, be sure to set PCI Address Mode to PCI Bus Mode.

4.8.2 Preparation of installation

See the VMware information thoroughly at the time of installation preparation. For the VMware product, please contact who you purchased the product from. Set the following.

- 1. The following disk images are prepared. VMware media
- 2. Remove all FC cables.
- 3. Mount the following disk image by connecting the video redirection.
- Change the boot order, and set DVD Boot to the top priority of the starting order.
 For details, see "1.3.1 [Power Control] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.8.3 VMware installation

This section describes the installation of the operating system by SVIM.

The type of the operating system installation by SVIM includes the following types. For the detailed procedure of the concerned mode, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

Mode	Functional Overview	Purpose
Quick mode	You can simply use the minimum settings necessary for operating system installation. This mode uses Fujitsu's recommended settings.	For easy installation.
Guide mode	You can specify setup information by following the instructions of the wizard. You can save the specified information in a configuration file for use during reinstallation.	For detailed setting of RAID or OS.

TABLE 4.6 Operating system installation by SVIM

Operations

- The settings are done to boot the ServerView Suite DVD from virtual media for the partition. For details on configuration, see"1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition..
 Note:

It can be started by selecting "Force boot from DVD" by Boot Selector in MMB Web-UI or it can be started from the virtual media by changing the boot order to DVD by UEFI. If it is started by selecting "Force boot from DVD" by Boot Selector in MMB Web-UI it is started in Legacy mode.

When operating system corresponds to the UEFI mode, the installation can be done in UEFI mode by changing the boot order according to the following procedure.

- a. After turning on the power supply of the partition, while the FUJITSU logo is displayed, press any key (such as [Space] key) except [Enter] key and the Boot Manager front page is displayed.
- b. The menu is selected on the Boot Manager front page in the following order. [Boot Maintenance Manager]-[Boot Options]-[Change Boot Order]-[Change the order]
- c. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For details on the setting method of boot order, see "■ Change Boot Order of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- d. [Commit Changes and Exit] [Reset System] is specified and the partition is rebooted.

- 3. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed. In case of English, select "English".
- 4. In initial display window, click [Next] button without setting anything.
- 5. Select [Deployment] in [Welcome ServerView Installation Manager] window.
- Select installation mode, select operating system to be installed and set the operating system.
 Remark

The IP address of LAN cannot be set in setting operating system. Set IP address after installing the operation system.

7. Click [Start installation].

The installation is started.

8. Replace with the installation medium of operating system according to the instructions of SVIM.

4.8.4 Setting of notification in case that OS freezes

Watchdog Timer allows notification in case that OS freezes. When the set time passes MMB System Event Log is logged and the notification is executed. For details, see "8.4 Automatic Partition Restart Conditions" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

4.8.5 Completion of VMware installation

Reboot the partition of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series after the completion of setting.

Warning

In the case of installation of VMware ESXi 5.x or ESXi 6.x in UEFI mode, you have to make and register new boot manager because boot option which is made in installation cannot boot OS automatically. See (12) [PRIMEQUEST 2000/1000 Series] of "7. Notes on ServerView Installation Manager (SVIM) (V11.15.01)" in FUJITSU Server PRIMEQUEST 2000/1000 Series Notes on ServerView Suite(CA92344-0679)

4.8.6 Installation of the bundled software

For the installation of bundled software, see "D.2 Installing VMware Bundled Software".

4.9 **Procedure of Hyper-V installation**

Install Hyper-V after installing the operating system (Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2012 or Windows Server 2008 R2).

4.10 Procedure of KVM installation

Install KVM after installing the operating system (Linux RHEL6).

See the following for the installation procedure of KVM.

RHEL7

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Virtualization Deployment and Administration Guide
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 Virtualization Getting Started Guide
- Virtualization Security Guide

RHEL6

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Virtualization Administration Guide
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Virtualization Getting Started Guide
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Virtualization Host Configuration and Guest Installation Guide
- Virtualization Security Guide

Note

[PRIMEQUEST2400E3/2800E3/2400E2/2800E2/2400E/2800E only]

For RHEL6 KVM, Raid Controller Card/HDD/SSD on Non Home SB can't assign to KVM guest using PCI passthrough function.

4.11 Procedure to install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server into the SAN Storage Unit

This section describes the procedures for installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server on the SAN storage unit. Confirm the MMB configuration and successful login to the MMB before starting the installation.

4.11.1 Presetting

Set the following if necessary.

- 1. Set the LUN of the SAN storage device.
- 2. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.
 - For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
 - For the UEFI Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- Set the BIOS to recognize LUN of the FC card, Converged Network Adapter and NIC for iSCSI Boot.
 For setting the FC card, Converged Network Adapter and NIC for iSCSI Boot, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.
- 4. Check the setting of the partition by MMB after removing the internal HDD/SSD of PRIMEQUEST.
 - SB/IOU configuration is set
 - See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"
 - Console redirection is set See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"
 - Video redirection: Enable
 - Virtual media: Enable
 - Various modes are set
 - See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"
- 5. Connect only the LUN which installs the SAN storage device to the partition of PRIMEQUEST.
 - For the setting of SAN storage device, see the manual attached with the SAN storage device.
- Allocate the I/O space in the FC card for boot path and in the SAS RAID controller card.
 For details on allocation of the I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" in this document and "3.4.4.2 I/O Space Assignment Configuration" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.11.2 Preparation of installation

Prepare the SLES installation DVD.

Preparation for boot

The FC cable is made single path (connect only one FC cable).

4.11.3 Installation

The operating system installation with SVIM is explained.

There are the following types for operating system installation with SVIM. For the detailed procedure of each mode, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

TABLE 4.7 Operating system installation with SVIM

Mode	Functional Overview	Purpose
Quick mode	You can simply use the minimum settings necessary for operating system installation. This mode uses Fujitsu's recommended settings.	For easy installation.
Guide mode	You can specify setup information by following the instructions of the wizard. You can save the specified information in a configuration file for use during reinstallation.	For detailed setting of RAID or OS.

Operations

- The settings are done to boot the ServerView Suite DVD from virtual media for the partition. For details on configuration, see "1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition. Note:

The UEFI boots or the Legacy boots can be selected in the following procedure.

- a. Select [Force boot into EFI Boot Manager] in MMB Web-UI.
- b. Turn on the power supply of the partition.
- c. The menu is selected on the Boot Manager front page in the following order. [Boot Maintenance Manager]-[Boot Options]-[Change Boot Order]-[Change the order]
- d. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For details on the setting method of boot order, see "■ Change Boot Order of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- e. Select [Commit Changes and Exit].
- f. Return to the front page pushing the escape key twice.
- g. Select [Boot Manager].
- h. For UEFI aware OS, select UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx. For Legacy OS, select Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx.
- 3. Windows Boot Manager is displayed. Select the first menu in Windows Boot Manager.
- 4. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed. In case of English, select "English".

- 5. In initial display window, click [Next] button without setting anything.
- 6. Select [Deployment] in [Welcome ServerView Installation Manager] window.
- 7. Select installation mode, select operating system to be installed and set the operating system.

Warning

If you select Guide mode in the environment where Dynamic Reconfiguration will be used, do not select [Minimum Install] on [Package Selection] window. Dynamic Reconfiguration cannot operate properly.

Remark

The IP address of LAN cannot be set in setting operating system. Set IP address after installing the operation system.

8. Click [Start installation].

The installation is started.

9. Replace with the installation medium of operating system according to the instructions of SVIM.

4.11.4 Configuring Bundled Software after Installation

After completing OS installation, configure the bundled software.

4.11.5 After installation, connecting SAN and internal HDD/SSD

For details on connecting the SAN and internal HDD after the installation, see the *PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual.* Also, for details on driver parameters, see the readme file that comes with the driver.

4.12 Procedure to install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server into the Internal HDD

This section concisely describes the procedures for installing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server on the internal HDD. Confirm the MMB configuration and successful login to the MMB before starting the installation.

4.12.1 Presetting

If necessary, the following settings are done.

- 1. Remove each internal HDD that is not the installation destination.
- 2. The setting of partition is checked by MMB.
 - Setting of configuration of SB/IOU See "3.4.1 Setting the partition configuration"
 - Setting of Console Redirection
 - See "3.4.6 Settings of Console Redirection"
 - Video redirection: Enable
 - Virtual media: Enable
 - Setting of various modes
 - See "3.4.5 Various mode settings"
- 3. [PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS is set.
 - For the UEFI Install
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "EFI Compatible ROM".
 - For the UEFI Install:
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[PCI ROM Priority] of BIOS menu to "Legacy ROM".
 - Set [Device Manager]-[PCI Subsystem Configuration]-[OpROM Scan Configuration] of BIOS menu to "Enable" only for booting Device.
- 4. The I/O space is allocated in the SAS card and in the SAS RAID controller card.

For details on allocation of I/O space, see "3.4.5 Various mode settings" in this document and "3.4.4.2 I/O Space Assignment Configuration" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

4.12.2 Preparing for Installation

Prepare the SLES installation DVD.

4.12.3 Installation

The operating system installation with SVIM is explained.

There are the following types for operating system installation with SVIM. For the detailed procedure of each mode, see ServerView Suite ServerView Installation Manager.

Mode	Functional Overview	Purpose
Quick mode	The operating system can be installed with the recommendation	It is used when the operating system is
	of Fujitsu only by setting minimum required limits.	to be readily installed.
Guide mode	The setup information is set following the wizard. The	It is used when the details of RAID and
	information which is set is saved in the configuration file, and it	the operating system are set.
	can be used during reinstallation.	

Operations

- The settings are done to boot the ServerView Suite DVD from virtual media for the partition. For details on configuration, see"1.6.2 Remote control operation (BMC)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).
- Connect ServerView Suite DVD 1 by the virtual media, and then turn on the power supply of the partition. Note:

"Force boot from DVD" can be selected by the Boot Selector and can be activated from DVD or it can be activated from the DVD drive by changing the boot order into DVD with UEFI.

When operating system corresponds to the UEFI mode, the installation can be done in UEFI mode by changing the boot order according to the following procedure.

- a. After turning on the power supply of the partition, while the FUJITSU logo is displayed, press any key (such as [Space] key) except [Enter] key and the Boot Manager front page is displayed.
- b. The menu is selected on the Boot Manager front page in the following order. [Boot Maintenance Manager]-[Boot Options]-[Change Boot Order]-[Change the order]
- c. For UEFI aware OS, UEFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For Legacy OS, Fujitsu Virtual CDROMx xxx is set at the upper-most step.
 For details on the setting method of boot order, see "■ Change Boot Order of "3.5.2 [Boot Options] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- d. [Commit Changes and Exit] [Reset System] is specified and the partition is rebooted.
- 3. After a period of time, the language selection window is displayed. In case of English, select "English".
- 4. In initial display window, click [Next] button without setting anything.
- 5. Select [Deployment] in [Welcome ServerView Installation Manager] window.
- 6. Select installation mode, select operating system to be installed and set the operating system.

Warning

If you select Guide mode in the environment where Dynamic Reconfiguration will be used, do not select [Minimum Install] on [Package Selection] window. Dynamic Reconfiguration cannot operate properly.

Remark

The IP address of LAN cannot be set in setting operating system. Set IP address after installing the operation system.

- Click [Start installation].
 The installation is started.
- 8. Replace with the installation medium of operating system according to the instructions of SVIM.

4.12.4 Configuring Bundled Software after Installation

4.12.5 After completing OS installation, configure the bundled

software.After installation, connecting SAN and internal HDD/SSD

See PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual , for connecting SAN with internal HDD/SSD, after installation. Moreover, for details on driver parameter, see readme of the driver supplied.

CHAPTER 5 Work after Operating System installation

This chapter describes every setting that is required after installation of the operating system of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series.

5.1 Types of work

Content and type of operations that are to be implemented after installation of the operating system are given below.

Task	Installed operating system	See
Setting of SVAgent	Linux, Windows	5.2 Setting of SVS (SVagent/SVAgentless Service/SVmco)
Setting of sadump	Linux	0 Setting of sadump
Setting of Dump environment	Windows	5.4 Setup of dump environment (Windows)
Setting of Dump environment	Linux	5.5 Setup of dump environment (Linux)
Setting of NTP client	Linux	5.6 Setup of NTP client
Management information of MMB / Save configuration information of BIOS	Linux, Windows	5.7 Saving management and configuration information
Setting of Write Policy of SAS array controller card.	Linux, Windows	"Write Policy" recommended setting of SAS array controller card"
Setting of Serial Port	Linux	5.9 Setup of Serial Port

TABLE 5.1 Type of operations

5.2 Setting of SVS (SVagent/SVAgentless Service/SVmco)

If SVS installation was selected settings for following products must be done after installation of OS. See the following manuals for the details of the settings of SVagent/SVmco.

SVmco is necessary, only when you use PRIMECLUSTER linkage

- SVagent:
 - ServerView Operations Manager Installation ServerView Agents for Linux
 - ServerView Operations Manager Installation ServerView Agents for Windows
- SVmco:
 - ServerView Mission Critical Option User Manual.
- SVAgentless Service on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server
 In case of SUSE Linux Enterprise Server, it is necessary to extend the syslog-ng configuration file

- Insert the following lines into the file /etc/syslog-ng/syslog-ng.conf: destination hwlog { pipe("/dev/HWLog/syslog_fifo"); }; log { source(src); destination(hwlog); };
- 2. Start YaST and select Novell AppArmor Edit Profile.
- 3. Choose the name of the active syslog daemon (/sbin/syslog-ng or /sbin/syslogd) and click Next.
- 4. Enter /dev/HWLog/syslog_fifo in the Enter or modify File-name field.
- 5. Under Permissions activate the Read and Write option.
- 6. Save this entry.
- 7. Restart AppArmor by:
 - /etc/init.d/boot.apparmor restart

Due to a bug in SLES it is possible, that the AppArmor profile /etc/apparmor.d/sbin.syslog-ng contains an invalid statement. The following line

@{CHROOT_BASE} =

has to be changed to

@{CHROOT_BASE} = ""

AppArmor has to restart after this change.

 Restart syslog services by: /etc/init.d/syslog restart

5.2.1 Management LAN setting for SVagent

In the following cases, management LAN (for communicating Operations Manager) setting is required.

- 1. ServerView Agent initial installation
- 2. The Partition is configured with disks which is replicated by the other Partition.
- 3. IP address of Management LAN is changed.

Windows

1. Confirm if a "ServerView Server Control" service is running.

Then, if the service is NOT running, start the service.

How to start a "ServerView Server Control" service

- a. Click the [Start menu] -> [Control Panel] -> [Service].
- b. Select the "ServerView Service Control" in the right side view.
- c. Click the [Operation] -> [Start] in the menu bar, then a "ServerView Server Control" is started.
- 2. Copy a "MgmtIP.exe", which is included in the following directory of SVS DVD media, to an arbitrary folder on the target Windows OS.

¥SVSLocalTools¥Japanese¥Svmanage¥Tools¥MgmtIP¥

- 3. Execute the following command on the Command Prompt.
 - <IP Address> below is IP Address of OS side of Management LAN.
 - * For IPv4 configuration

C:¥Temp¥MgmtIP.exe -i <IP Address>

* For IPv6 configuration

C:¥Temp¥MgmtIP.exe -k <IP Address>

4. The command is succeeded if the following message is shown.

MgmtlP:new management IP address \$IP Address\$ stored

Linux

1. Confirm if eecd process is running or not.

#ps ax |grep eecd

Then, if eecd is NOT running, start ServerView Agent.

#/usr/sbin/srvmagt start

2. Execute the following command for setting OS IP address.

#/usr/sbin/eecdcp -c oc=E002 oe=000C ¥'\$IPADDRESS¥'

e.g.)

#/usr/sbin/eecdcp -c oc=E002 oe=000C ¥'192.168.0.1¥'

5.3 Setting of sadump

In sadump, the following items are set for each partition.

- Validation of sadump
- Collection address of dump
- Compression at the time of dump collection
- Movement after dump collection
- Re-use of dump collection address.

The sadump setting is executed on the BIOS set-up menu. Before the setting is executed, it is necessary to reserve the area of the damp device which becomes the collection address of dump. When there is a system fault, the register information and memory contents are output to the dump device. Due to this reason, the capacity of the device that performs dump output is determined, so as to match the memory size. The required area is obtained by the estimation given below and it is reserved.

Amount of installed memory + FIXED VALUE (*)
(*) In PRIMEQUEST 2400E/2800E/2800E/2800E2/2800E2,
when amount of installed memory is less than 6 TB, FIXED VALUE is 512 MB.
When amount of installed memory is 6 TB or more, FIXED VALUE is 2150 MB.
When Dynamic Reconfiguration is enabled,
FIXED VALUE is always 2150 MB even if the amount of installed memory is less than 6 TB.
In PRIMEQUEST 2400E3/2800E3/2800E3,
when amount of installed memory is less than 6 TE, FIXED VALUE is 1280 MB.
When amount of installed memory is 6 TB or more, FIXED VALUE is 2920 MB.
When Dynamic Reconfiguration is enabled,
FIXED VALUE is always 2920 MB even if the amount of installed memory is less than 6 TB.

The dump device can use the disk and the disk partition. In case of dump device created for the disk partition, create the disk partition when installing the operating system. In case of setting the device on ETERNUS to dump device, it is necessary to execute UEFI driver setting in advance.

For the details of setting procedure see, PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual. All the screenshots are display examples. The display contents differ according to the system configuration. For the details of sadump settings, see "Chapter 6 Setting of sadump environment" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

All the windows given here are display examples. The display contents differ according to the system configuration.

Remarks

Sadump supports only UEFI OS. Check OS installation mode.

Operations

1. Device Manager menu of UEFI is displayed.

For the details of device manager menu display, see, "Chapter 3 UEFI Menu Operations" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539)

FIGURE 5.1 Example of Device Manager Menu



2. Select [sadump Configuration] and press [Enter] key

→Main menu (sadump) is displayed

FIGURE 5.2 Main menu (sadump)

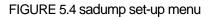
sadump Configuration		
Available sadump func • Set up Manager • Dump device Manager Exit	tions	Set up of sadump.
†↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Select Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit

Select [Set-up Manager] and press [Enter] key
 →sadump set-up menu is displayed.

Set up Manager		
Set up of sadump Item sadump COMPRESS RECYCLE REBOOT Restore to factory Commit Changes and Discard Changes and	Exit	Enable/Disable the sadump function is specified.
†↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Complete Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit Entry

FIGURE 5.3 sadump set-up menu

4. Select [Enabled] on [sadump].



Set up Manager		
Set up of sadump Item sadump COMPRESS RECYCLE REBOOT Restore to factory <u>Commit Changes and</u> Discard Changes and	Exit	Commit the changes and exit.
†↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Select Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit

5. Select [Commit Changes and Exit] and press [Enter].

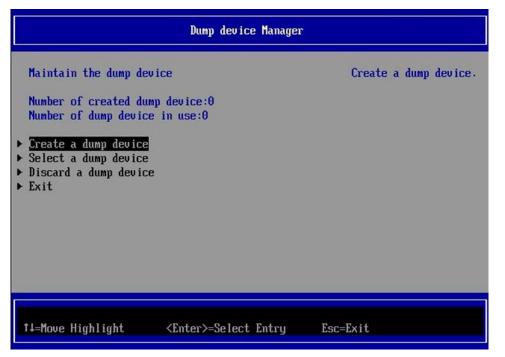
 \rightarrow Return to the main menu (sadump) after the settings are reflected.

sadump Configuration		
Available sadump fund • Set up Manager • <u>Dump device Manager</u> Exit	ctions	Maintenance the dump device.

- 6. Select [Dump device Manager] on main menu (sadump), and press [Enter] key.

 \rightarrow The dump device maintenance menu is displayed.





7. Select [Create a dump device], and press [Enter] key.

→The dump device configuration menu is displayed.

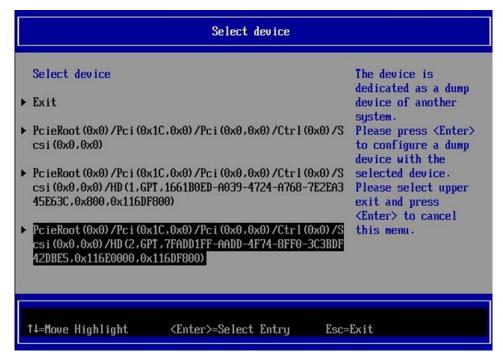
Create a dump device		
Create a dump devia Create mode • <u>Disk selection</u> • Exit	ce <single></single>	In the case of the single device configuration, Move to Disk/Partition Selection Menu. In the case of the multiple devices configuration, Move to Disk Selection Menu.
†↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Select Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit

FIGURE 5.7 Dump Device Structure Menu

8. Select [Disk selection], and press [Enter] key.

 \rightarrow The dump device selection menu is displayed.

FIGURE 5.8 Dump Device Selection Menu



Select the disk or the disk partition, and set the disk or the disk partition where the dump device is to be configured.
 →The dump device selection menu is displayed.



(Data corruption)

When the dump device is selected, reconfirm whether the selection of disk is correct. If the operation is executed with an incorrect disk selection, data would be corrupted.

Remark

For the ACPI name that shows the disk or the disk partition, see "3.6 Device Path" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Select device		
Select device • Exit	The device is dedicated as a dump device of another system.	
PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1C,0x0) /Pci (0x0,0x0) /Ctrl (0x0) /S csi (0x0,0x0)	Please press <enter> to configure a dump device with the</enter>	
PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1C,0x0) /Pci (0x0,0x0) /Ctrl (0x0) /S csi (0x0,0x0) /HD (1,GPT,1661B0ED-A039-4724-A768-7E2EA3 45E63C,0x800,0x116DF800)	selected device. Please select upper exit and press <enter> to cancel</enter>	
PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1C,0x0) /Pci (0x0,0x0) /Ctrl (0x0) /S csi (0x0,0x0) /HD (2,GPT,7FADD1FF-AADD-4F74-8FF0-3C3BDF 42DBE5,0x116E0000,0x116DF800)	this menu.	
↑↓=Move Highlight <enter>=Select Entry Esc=</enter>	Exit	

FIGURE 5.9 Dump Device Selection Menu

10. Press [Enter] key.

 \rightarrow The dump device is created. Return to dump device configuration menu.

Warning

When the dump device is created it is initialized. Depending on the size of the selected disk or that of the disk partition, the time required for initialization would be different. In some cases, it takes time for initialization, and then it takes a few minutes or more to change to the next window.

Create a dump device		
Create a dump device	•	Exit this menu.
Create mode • Disk selection • Exit	<single></single>	
†↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Select Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit

FIGURE 5.10 Dump Device Structure Menu

11. Select [Exit] and press [Enter] key.

 \rightarrow Return to the dump device maintenance menu.



	Dump device Manager	
Maintain the dump devi Number of created dump Number of dump device Create a dump device Select a dump device Discard a dump device Exit	device:1	Select a dump device.
†↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Select Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit

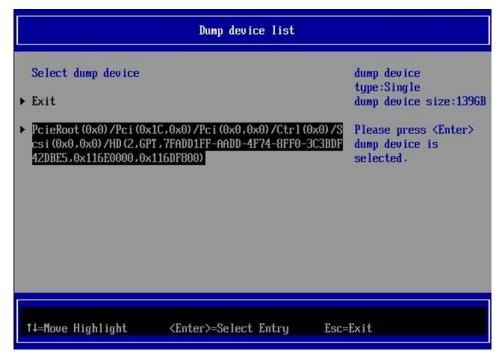
Select [Select a dump device] on the dump device maintenance menu and press [Enter] key.
 →The dump device set up menu is displayed.

Select a dump device			
Select the dump device use • [1] • [2] • [3] Clear setting • Commit changes and Exit • Discard changes and Exit	d	The 1st dump device is selected. < Enter > Then. it moves to the dump device list.	
†↓=Move Highlight <en< th=""><td>ter>=Select Entry</td><td>Esc=Exit</td></en<>	ter>=Select Entry	Esc=Exit	

FIGURE 5.12 Dump Device Setting Menu

- 13. Select the first dump device is specified. [1] and press [Enter] key.
 - \rightarrow The dump device list menu is displayed.





14. Select the disk used for the dump device or the disk partition and press [Enter] key.

 \rightarrow The dump device is decided, and the action returns to the dump device set menu.



FIGURE 5.14 Dump Device Setting Menu

- 15. Select [Commit Changes and Exit] and press [Enter] key.
 - → The dump device is decided, and the action returns to the dump device maintenance menu.

FIGURE 5.15 Dump Device Maintenance Menu



16. Select [Exit], and press [Enter] key

 \rightarrow The action returns to the main menu (sadump)

sadump Configuration		
Available sadump fund > Set up Manager > Dump device Manager Exit	tions	Exit set up tool.
î↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Select Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit

FIGURE 5.16 Main Menu (sadump)

17. Select [Exit], and press [Enter] key

 \rightarrow Setting of sadump Configuration is completed.

- 18. When the HDD which is installed under SAS array controller card is set as a dump device, advance next. When the HDD on ETERNUS is set as a dump device, it is end here.
- 19. After confirming the following condition, change "Write Cache Policy" of SAS array controller card connecting a dump device to "Force White Back". It is possible to get dump faster by this setting (dump time becomes about 1/4 in comparison with before setting change). However don't change the setting when the condition is not met. Data destruction which operational system does not expect may occur.

Condition

- HDD for operational system and HDD for dump device are installed under different SAS array controller cards.
 or
- HDD for operational system and HDD for dump device are installed under same SAS array controller card, and flash backup unit is installed on the SAS array controller card.

For details on building a RAID configuration using internal hard disks, see the SAS RAID controller Guide below.

- 12Gb/s MegaRAID SAS Software

5.4 Setup of dump environment (Windows)

Windows OS provides memory dump function as standard. For obtaining the dump, it is necessary to secure the disc area in advance. For details regarding the setup of dump environment, see "11.4.3.Setup of dump environment (Windows)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

5.4.1 About memory dump file/paging file

Memory dump file stores the debug information when STOP error (Fatal system error) occurs in the system. Settings for obtaining the memory dump are done after installing the operating system to be used in the operation or after installing the application.

The paging file is created in the hard disk to temporarily secure the memory area which has not been used. Paging file is also used at the time of creating the memory dump file. At the time of creating the memory dump file, entire memory dump information is stored temporarily in the paging file.

For the details regarding the memory dump file and paging file, see "11.4.3.Setup of dump environment (Windows)" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

5.5 Setup of dump environment (Linux)

In RHEL, the environment which can acquire the dump most reliably can be prepared by combining the kdump function which is a standard function of the operating system and the sadump function of hardware.

5.5.1 How to use sadump (Linux)

This section explains steps for sadump. Sadump allows you to store memory dump under the situation like below while kdump, the standard Red Hat Linux function does not allows this.

- OS panic or hang up before Kdump service starts
- Error while Kdump is working
- 1. Preparation

Install the following two packages corresponded the kernel version in use .

- kernel-debuginfo-common
- kernel-debuginfo
- 2. Configuring UEFI

Read "5.3 Setting of sadump" to configure UEFI for sadump. Note the following points.

- Set "RECYCLE" in Set up Manager to "<Enable>". If it is not "<Enable>", configuring dump devices is needed every time after taking a memory dump by sadump.
- Select "Create a dump device" in Dump device Manager, and set "Create mode" to "<Single>"." <Multiple>" is not supported.

3. Configuring OS

Kdump need to be set up beforehand to use sadump. After configuring Kdump, the additional configuration is needed as follows.

Configuration not to reboot after panic
 Set kernel parameter "kernel.panic" to 0 (default is 0). If not set, system reboot automatically after panic and the chance to start sadump is missed. Configure /etc/sysctl.conf as follows.

kernel.par	nic=0	
-	Configuration to stop system after Kdump	
	In /etc/kdump.conf, set "default" to "halt" or "shell". If not set, system reboot automatically when Kdump fails and	
	the chance to start sadump is missed.	
-	Configuration to start sadump	
	Set "blacklist kvm-intel" in /etc/kdump.conf. If not set, SMI is blocked and sadump cannot start.	
	Example of /etc/kdump.conf	
ext4 LABEI	L=/dump	
path /		
core_collector cpsparse=always		
extra_bins /bin/cp		
disk_timeout 60		
default sł	nell	
blacklist	kvm-intel	

- Configuration to start Kdump by NMI

As a procedure to start sadump, starting Kdump by NMI is needed at first. Configure /etc/sysctl.conf as follows.

kernel.unknown_nmi_panic=1

4. Start sadump and confirmation

Start sadump as follows.

- a. Send NMI to start Kdump
 In MMB WebUI, Select [Partition], and select [NMI] in [Power Control], and click [Apply]
- b. If Kdump does not start, then start sadump
 In MMB WebUI, Select [Partition], and select [sadump] in [Power Control], and click [Apply]

When memory dumping by sadump starts, the following message is displayed in console screen, and the number is counted up gradually.

[0.0%].

The number becomes 100 and the following message is displayed when memory dump is finished.

Dumping Complete

After memory dump is finished and OS is rebooted, confirm memory dump by using crash command. This is an example to check memory dump which is saved on /dev/sdb1. The "DATE" means the date and time when memory dump was captured.

crash /usr/lib/debug/lib/modules/2.6.32-358.el6.x86_64/vmlinux /dev/sdb1

```
(snip)
  KERNEL: /usr/lib/debug/lib/modules/2.6.32-358.el6.x86_64/vmlinux
  DUMPFILE: /dev/sdb1
  CPUS: 2
  DATE: Fri Oct 11 09:10:39 2013
  UPTIME: 00:19:04
  LOAD AVERAGE: 0.14, 0.03, 0.01
  TASKS: 125
  NODENAME: localhost
  RELEASE: 2.6.32-358.el6.x86_64
  VERSION: #1 SMP Tue Jan 29 11:47:41 EST 2013
  MACHINE: x86_64 (1861 Mhz)
  MEMORY: 4 GB
  PANIC: "Oops: 0002 [#1] SMP " (check log for details)
  PID: 7866
  COMMAND: "bash"
  TASK: ffff8801387c8aa0 [THREAD_INFO: ffff8801394e2000]
  CPU: 0
  STATE: TASK_RUNNING (PANIC)
```

5. Send memory dump to vendor

Send memory dump to vendor who supports RHEL. makedumpfile command can be used to convert memory dump to a normal file. makedumpfile can generate small dump file by compression or filtering. Read man manual of makedumpfile for details. This is an example of saving memory dump on /dev/sdb1 to a vmcore file using compression and filtering out memory region except kernel memory (Write following command in one line).

```
# makedumpfile -c -d 31 -x
/usr/lib/debug/lib/modules/2.6.32-358.el6.x86_64/vmlinux /dev/sdb1 vmcore
```

5.6 Setup of NTP client

See "6.2NTP Configuration", for the setup of the NTP client.

5.7 Saving management and configuration information

This explains about how to save the following information. Be sure to save the UEFI configuration information.

- 5.7.1 Saving MMB configuration information
- 5.7.2 Saving BIOS configuration information

Remark

Save the UEFI configuration information regularly after starting the operation. For saving EFI configuration information, see "5.7.2 Saving BIOS configuration information"

All the screenshots are display examples. The contents displayed may differ depending on the system configuration.

5.7.1 Storage of MMB configuration information

This explains the method to take back-up of the MMB configuration information on remote PC. [Maintenance] menu in MMB Web-UI is used, for storing the MMB configuration information.

Operations

- 1. Select the [Maintenance]-[Backup/Restore Configuration]-[Backup/Restore MMB Configuration]
 - \rightarrow [Backup/Restore MMB Configuration] window is displayed.

System Partition User Administration		Logout
Mantenance >Backup Kestore Cor Financare Update Backup Restore Configuration Backup Restore MMB Configu- Backup BIOS Configuration Restore BIOS Configuration Mantenance Wuard	figuration >Backup Restore MMB Configuration Backup MMB Configuration To backup the MMB Configuration, click "Backup" button.	Help
REMCS	Restore MMB Configuration To restore the MMB Configuration, select a file and click "Restore" button.	
	Restore	

FIGURE 5.17 Example of [Backup/Restore MMB Configuration] Window

2. Click [Backup] button

 \rightarrow Storage location dialogue box of browser is displayed.

3. Select the storage pass and click the [OK] button

 \rightarrow Downloading of configuration information file is started.

Initial file of the MMB configuration information for back-up is as follows.

MMB_ (Date on which the backup of the file taken)(MMB version).dat

5.7.2 Storage of BIOS configuration information

This section describes the method for taking the backup of the BIOS configuration information on a remote PC. [Maintenance] menu in MMB Web-UI is used for storing the BIOS configuration information.

Operations

Select the [Maintenance]-[Backup/Restore Configuration]-[Backup BIOS Configuration]
 → [Backup BIOS Configuration] window is displayed.

Finuware Update Backup Restore Configuration Backup Restore MMB Configuration Backup BIOS Configuration Restore BIOS Configuration	Backs	-		
Maintenance Wizard		Ħ	Partition Name	
REMCS	0	0	kato	
	0	1	kato2	
	0	2	hayashida	
	0	3	kikkawa	
		2		

FIGURE 5.18 Example of [Backup BIOS Configuration]

- Select the radio button of partition which takes the backup of configuration information, and click [Backup] button.
 → Dialogue box which specifies the storage location, is displayed.
- Select the storage pass and click [OK] button.
 Initial file name of the BIOS configuration for back-up is as follows.
 Partition number_ Date on which the backup of the file is taken_(BIOS version).dat

5.7.3 Storage of LAN card and CNA card configuration information

When configuring Option ROM functions(*) of PCIe card, write down the settings you have done in a configuration sheet for each card and keep it as a backup if needed. You may be required to re-configure the settings after replacing a faulty card to a spare part. The configuration sheets for PCIe cards are listed and downloadable in the following site: http://www.fujitsu.com/global/services/computing/server/primequest/

* Functions of option ROM

SR-IOV setting, UMC(Universal Multi-Channel), Boot setting, etc.

5.8 "Write Policy" recommended setting of SAS array

controller card

You can attach a flash backup unit to SAS array controller card (including dual channel).

The recommended setting of Write Policy is as follows. It is different whether SAS array controller card has a flash backup unit or not. Please refer to "LSI MegaRAID(R)SAS Software" for the detailed function and the setting method.

Flash backup unit	Write Policy recommended setting	
Without flash backup unit	Write Through	
With flash backup unit	Write Back	

5.9 Setup of Serial Port

Serial port (/dev/ttyS1) is set as 115200 bps.

5.9.1 Setup of Serial Port (Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x)

- 1. Login as root account.
- 2. Add the following sentence to /etc/rc.d/rc.local.

setserial /dev/ttyS1 baud_base 115200

stty -F /dev/ttyS1 115200

3. Add the execution right to /etc/rc.d/rc.local by executing the following command.

chmod u+x /etc/rc.d/rc.local

4. Boot rc-local service by executing the following command.

- # systemctl start rc-local
- 5. Reboot OS

5.9.2 Setup of Serial Port (Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x)

- 1. Login as root account.
- 2. Add the following sentence to /etc/rc.d/rc.local.

setserial /dev/ttyS1 baud_base 115200

stty -F /dev/ttyS1 115200

3. Reboot OS

5.9.3 Setup of Serial Port (SUSE (R) Linux Enterprise Server 12)

- 1. Login as root account.
- 2. Install setsserial package when it is not installed.
- 3. Add the following sentence to /etc/init.d/boot.local.

setserial /dev/ttyS1 baud_base 115200

4. Reboot OS

CHAPTER 6 Work after installation

This chapter explains the operation which is to be implemented after introducing the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series, such as setting of NTP or setting of security.

6.1 Redundant configuration of network adaptor

For establishing the network after installation, following teaming (multi-pass) is set by using the utility corresponding to each network adaptor.

Setup of network adaptor (Intel Gigabit Ethernet (GbE))

For management LAN and operation LAN, redundant setting of network is done. Network to be targeted is (2) in the following Figure.

- Windows: Configure the teaming by using the Intel PROSet (R) (*1). For details, see help of IntelPROSet (R).
- *1: In Windows Server 2012 or later, NIC teaming of standard function of the operating system, can also be used.

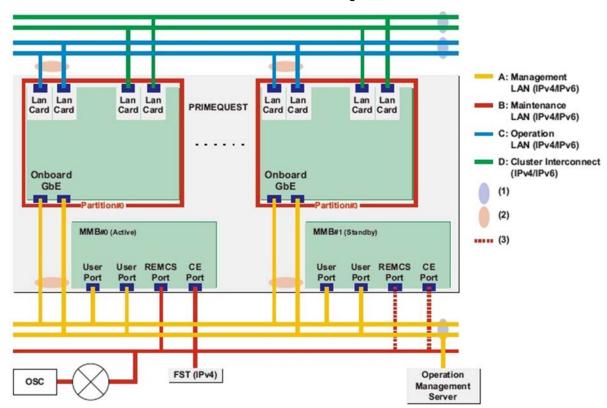


FIGURE 6.1 External network configuration

Number	Description		
(1)	Switching Hub redundancy		
(2)	redundancy by teaming(such as GLS)		
(3)	Standby side is disabled		

Note

There are some notes on teaming with IntelPROSet (R).

For the details on the notes, see "G.9 NIC (Network Interface Code)" of PRIIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537)

6.2 NTP Configuration

This section describes the operation method in the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series, regarding the operation of time correction wherein Network Time Protocol (NTP) is used.

NTP is the protocol which provides the method by which time information is exchanged between the computers of same type. The time correction function references the correct time on another system at system startup. Then, it sets the time and keeps it within the specified error range.

At that time, system with original time is called as NTP server and the reference system is called as NTP client. In the NTP server, it is necessary to activate the NTP service, for responding to the request from the NTP client.

In case of the operation of time correction which is used in NTP, when the operating system is Windows, see "Appendix E Specifications and setting of NTP server (Windows)"

For usage conditions and notes of Extended Partitioning function, see "3.2.1 Extended Partitioning" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537)".

All the windows given here are the display examples. Contents displayed according to system configuration are different.

6.2.1 Method of operating NTP in PRIMEQUEST 2000 series

This explains the method of time correction of each partition where NTP in the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series is used. In the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series, there are two types of objects which set the time.

- MMB
- Each partition

For the details regarding the NTP client of MMB, see "6.2.2. Specification of NTP server"

Time of each partition is corrected by setting the NTP client of the operating system which is installed. For the stable NTP operation, specify multiple (In case of RHEL, three servers or more) NTP servers from each NTP client. Schematic diagram of operation when NTP server other than MMB is used is shown in "Figure 7.2 Operation diagram when external NTP server is used (Case when 3 NTP servers are used).

Note

Match the stratum (Stratum) while using multiple NTP servers.

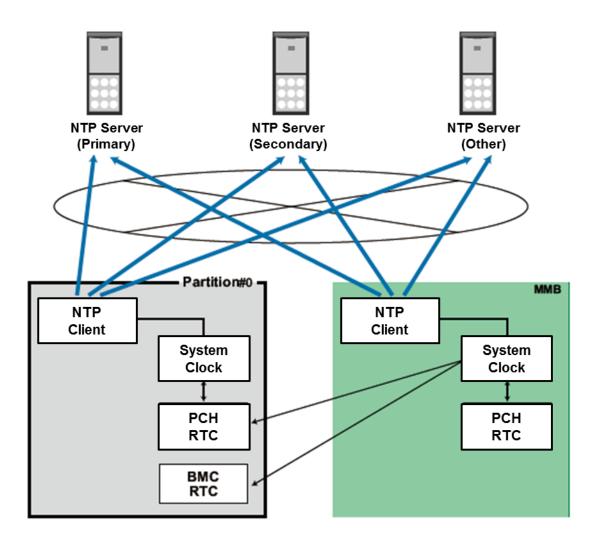


FIGURE 6.2 Operation Diagram when External NTP Server is used (When three NTP servers are used)

Only one NTP server is specified: in that case, when it is not possible to communicate with the NTP server which is specified by the NTP client, since other synchronous object does not exist, NTP server is disabled. NTP client cannot do the time correction according to NTP within the period in which communication with the NTP server is restored. As a result, time is recorded with the system clock accuracy. Since there is an individual difference in the accuracy of the system clock, when time correction according to NTP is not possible, time gap between the systems is enlarged, and problems might be caused in the middleware or in the application.

Remark

NTP server 1-NTP server 3 are the NTP servers having high accuracy of time in internet or in intranet.

6.2.2 Setting NTP server

Other NTP server which is time synchronous is specified by using the NTP client function of the MMB.

Note

Time of MMB and time of partition side is controlled by the respective independent clocks. Clock of MMB does not repot and adjust the partition clock. Since the time of MMB and time of partition, are necessary for following responses, keep the MMB time and the partition time the same or at least close.

- At the time of comparing the MMB side log and the operating system side log in partition by the hard failure
- At the time of executing the system inspection or executing the security inspection
- When alarm occurs in the time maintenance battery of the partition side.

Execute any of the following ways to adjust the time.

- Set the time manually from the MMB Web-UI
- Set the time by using the NTP client function of the MMB

Remark

Set the time on Operation System if NTP is not used.

Operations

1. Click [Networking configuration] – [Date/Time].

-> [Date/Time] window is displayed. For the details of [Date/Time] window, see "1.5.1 [Date/Time] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 6.3 Example of [Date/Time] Window

System Partition User Adm >Network Configuration >Da	ninistration Network Configuration ate/Time	<u>Maintenance</u>	Logout 🧹
 Date/Time Network Interface Management LAN Port C Network Protocols Refresh Rate 	Date/Time Click the Apply Button to apply a	11 changes.	Refresh Help
SNMP Configuration	Date	2013 - 4 - 16	
 ➡ SSL ➡ SSH ➡ Remote Server Manageme 	Time	☐ Modify the Time 9 : 53 : 26	
Access Control	Time zone	Asia 🗸 / Tokyo 🗸	
Alarm E-Mail	NTP	○Enable	
	NTP Time Correction Mode	● Step ○ Slew	
	NTP Server1	::	
	NTP Server2	::	
	NTP Server3	::	
	Current Sync Status		
		Apply Cancel	<u>^</u>

- 2. Click [Enable] for [NTP].
- 3. Select [NTP Time Correction Mode].
- Enter IP address of other NTP server.
 NTP Server 1: Specify NTP server.
 NTP Server 2: Specify NTP server.
 NTP Server 3: Specify Other (Tertiary) NTP server.
- 5. Click [Apply] button.
 - MMB synchronizes with NTP server and time set in NTP Server 1 ~ NTP Server 3.
- 6. After few minutes click [Refresh] button and confirm whether the correct time is displayed.

6.3 Configuring DNS server

See "3.3.8 Configuration of DNS server", for configuration of DNS server.

6.4 Set up of SMTP

See "3.3.9 Set up of Alarm E-Mail" for configuration of SMTP.

6.5 Set up of security

This section describes how to make the necessary settings to ensure security and notification of errors during operation. Configure the security necessary for operation. It is recommended to take the back-up of the set-up information when below mentioned set ups are completed. See "3.5 Save structural information" for the back-up of the set information.

- 6.5.1 Set up of Access Control
- 6.5.2 Set up of SNMP
- 6.5.3 Set up of SSH
- 6.5.4 HTTPS Settings

All the screenshots are display examples and the contents to be displayed differ depending upon the system configuration.

6.5.1 Set up of Access Control

To secure the security of MMB, set up access control according to Network Protocol. For securing the security, it is recommended to set up access control at the time of installation. Access control can also be set up after the installation.

Selection of Filters of Editing objects

Operations

1. Click [Network Configuration] - [Access Control].

-> [Access Control] window is displayed. See "1.5.10 [Access Control] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539) for the details of [Access Control] window.

FIGURE 6.4 Example of [Access Control] Window

System Partition User Administrat	lion	TRACER CONTENT	Mainter	ance	Logout
>Network Configuration >Access C			1		
D Date Time					
Network Interface	Acc	Help			
C Management LAN Port Configura	-210.02	03063000	59,7550		
Network Protocols	Click A	Add Filter but	ton to add a new	filter	
Refresh Rate				Edit Remove Filter button to edit or remove the filter.	
SNMP Configuration					
🗈 SSL	Se	lect Protocol	IP Address	Subnet Mask/Prefix Length	
SSH	0	SSH	192.168.10.20	255.255.255.0	
Remote Server Management	_				
Access Control					
Alaem E-Mail					
				Add Filter Edit Filter Remove Filter Cancel	
21.000					

2. Filter of editing object is selected by radio button.

Addition and editing of filters

Operations

1. Click [Add Filter] button when filter is to be added and click [Edit Filter] button after selecting the filter when filter is to be edited.

-> At the time of addition [Add Filter] window and at the time of editing [Edit Filter] is displayed. See PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539) "[Add filter/Edit filter] Window of 1.5.10 [Access Control] window" for the details of [Add Filter] window and [Edit Filter] window.

te Time	estrol		
twork interface	Add Filter		H
anagement LAN Port Configura			_
twork Protocols fresh Rate	Click the Apply Button to	apply all changes.	
Configuration	Protocol	SSH 🖌	
1	Access Control	⊕ Enable ○ Disable	
H mote Server Management	IP Address	192 168 10 30	
cess Control	Subnet Mask Prefix L	enath 255 255 256 0	
trun E-Mail			
		[Apply] [Cancel]	

FIGURE 6.5 Example of [Add Filter] Window

- 2. Enter required items.
 - Maximum 64 filters can be set.

Remark

When there are proxy settings in Web browser of PC and work station, set IP address considering the proxy set up.

3. Click [Apply] button.

Deletion of Filter

Operations

- After selecting the filter, click [Remove Filter] button.
 ->Window of confirmation of deletion is displayed.
- 2. At the time of deletion, click [OK] button.

->Returns to [Access Control] window. The deletion of filter is confirmed on the list. If the deletion is to be cancelled, click [Cancel] button.

6.5.2 Set up of SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is set up. Configure SNMP with the permission of Administrator. Set whether to report any operational failure to an external destination, the notification destination.

- Enable SNMP
- Set the details of SNMP
- Set up transmission destination of SNMP trap
- Set up SNMP v3

Validate SNMP

Operations

1. Click [Network Configuration] - [Network Protocols].

-> [Network Protocols] window is displayed. See "1.5.4 [Network Protocols] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539) for the details of [Network Protocols] window.

FIGURE 6.6 Example of [Network Protocols] Window

	ation Network Configuration Maintenance		Logout
>Network Configuration >Networl			
 Date/Time Network Interface Management LAN Port Configu 	Network Protocols		Help
Network Protocols Refresh Rate SNMP Configuration	Click the Apply Button to apply all changes.		
SSL	Web (HTTP/HTTPS)		
SSH SSH	HTTP	● Enable ○ Disable	
Remote Server Management Access Control	HTTP Port#[80,1024-65535]	8081	
A coess Control	HTTPS	● Enable ○ Disable	
	HTTPS Port#[432,443,1024-65535]	432	
	TLS1.0/1.1	Enable O Disable	
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	600	
	t.		
	Tehet		
	Tehet	● Enable ○ Disable	
	Telnet Port#[23,1024-65535]	23	
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	600	
	SSH		
	SSH	● Enable ○ Disable	
	SSH Port#[22,1024-65535]	22	
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	600	
	SNMP		
	SNMP SNMP Agent	Enable Disable	
	Agent Port#[161,1024-65535]	161	
	SNMP Trap	Enable O Disable	
	Trap Port#[162,1024-65535]	162	
		Apply Cancel	

- 2. Enter [SNMP] items.
- 3. Click [Apply] button.

Set up of SNMP details

Operations

Click [Network Configuration] - [SNMP Configuration] - [Community].
 -> [SNMP Community] window is displayed. For the details on [SNMP Community] window, see "["■ [SNMP Community] window" of 1.5.6 [SNMP Configuration] Menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 6.7 Example of [SNMP Community] Window

Network Configuration >SNMP (dty				1.025
Date Tane Network Interface Management LAN Port Configur	SNMP Com	munity				
Network Protocols Refresh Rate SNMP Configuration	The second state of the second state of the second state	on to apply all changes.				
Community	System Informa	tion				
J Trap	System Name	PRIMEQUEST				
SNMPv3 Configuration	System Location					
SL SH	System Contact					
emote Server Management	Note)System N	me can be configured in	System-> <u>System Information</u> page.			
coess Control	Committee .					
Marm E-Mail	Community Community User		IP Address MASK	SNMP Version	Access	Auth
				1 🗸	Read Only 💉	noauth
				1.~	Read Only 💌	noauth
				1 ~	Read Only 💌	roaith
				1 -	Read Only 💌	nonuch
				1 .	Read Only 😽	Ingauth
				1 -	Read Only 😪	noauth
				1 -	Read Only 💌	ndauch
				1 -	Read Only 💌	noauth
				1 -	Read Only 💌	Insauth
				1 -	Read Only 👻	nearth
			the second se	1 () () () () () () () () () (100	tooauth.
				1 🗸	Read Only 💌	
				1 ~	Read Only ¥ Read Only ¥	(moauth)
				the second se	and the second sec	-
				1 🛩	Read Only 💌	mauth
				1 × 1 ×	Read Only 🛩 Read Only 🛩	noauth

2. Enter the required items.

Maximum 16 Communities can be set. The details regarding the community to be set, IP Address where Access is permitted, SNMP version, Access authority and authentication are entered.

At the time of deletion, click the items of [Community] and [IP Address].

3. Click [Apply] button.

Set up transmission destination of SNMP trap

Operations

- 1. Click [Network Configuration] [SNMP Configuration] [Trap].
 - -> [SNMP Trap] window is displayed. See "["= [SNMP Trap window] window" of 1.5.6 [SNMP Configuration] Menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539) for the details of [SNMP Trap] window.

FIGURE 6.8 Example of [SNMP Trap] Window

Dute Tane Network Interface Management LAN Port Configur Network Protocols Retiresh Rate SNMP Configuration Community	SNMP Trap Click the Apply Button to apply all changes.							
Trap SNMPv3 Configuration	Community/User	IP Address	SNMP Version	Auth	Auth Type	Auth passphrase Priv passphrase		
0 SSL 0 SSH 0 Remote Server Management			1.9	noauth 🛩	MD5			
Access Control Alarm E-Mail			1.0	nnauth 😔	MD5 9			
			1.9	neauth (9)	MD5 M			
			1 -	noauth 🖂	MD5 🔗			
			1.9	ooauth 🖂	MD5 M			
			1.00	noauth 🔗	MD5 -			
			1.4	nosuth [22]	MD5 /			
			1.0	noauth 🙁	MD5. M			
			1.4	ricauth 🖂	MD5 🛩			
			1 -	noauth 😒	MD5			

2. Enter the transmission destination.

A maximum of 16 Trap destinations can be set up.

The details regarding community or user name, IP address of trap transmission destination, SNMP version, and authentication level are set up.

Click [Apply] button. When [Test Trap] button is clicked, trap for test for currently set up trap destination can be transmitted.

Set up SNMP v3

Specific engine ID and specific user is set in SNMP v3.

Remark

When an engine ID or IP address is changed, all the users set for SNMP v3 access should be set again. To enable the set users, it is necessary to reboot SNMP service once it is stopped. When [Apply] button is clicked for that, SNMP service gets temporarily stopped.

Operations

1. Click [Network Configuration] - [SNMP Configuration] - [SNMP v3 Configuration].

-> [SNMP v3 Configuration] window is displayed. See "["■ [SNMP v3 Configuration] window" of 1.5.6 [SNMP Configuration] Menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539) for the details of [SNMP v3 Configuration] window.

FIGURE 6.9 Example of [SNMP v3 Configuration]

Date Time	2017) 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19	iguration						
D Network Interface	SNMP v3 Configuration Click the Apply Button to apply all changes.							
Management LAN Port Configura								
Network Protocols								
Carley Refresh Rate SNMP Configuration								
Community	Engine ID	1						
Trap	Leight LD							
SNMPv3 Configuration	User							
Ð SSL Ð SSH	User Name	Auth	Auth passplirase	Priv passplurase				
Remote Server Management	Cyce ryanic	Type	Auth passplarase (confirm)	Priv passplirase (confirm)				
Control		• MD5						
Alam E-Mail	L	SHA	ł	-				
		· MD5						
		SHA						
	0	· MD5						
	(the second sec	SHA						
		· MD5	1					
		SHA						
	0	• MD5						
		SHA						
			1					
		MD5 SHA						
			1	l				
		• MD5 SHA	-					
			1					
		• MD5						
	-	○ SHA						
		· MD5						
		SHA						
	(m)	1.000	1.					

2. Enter SNMP v3 user.

A maximum of 16 users can be registered.

3. Click [Apply] button.

SNMP service is restarted for reflecting the selected user.

6.5.3 Set up of SSH

Configure SSH for the MMB. You can set it with Administrator privileges.

Operations

 Click [Network Configuration] - [Network Protocols].
 [Network Protocols] window is displayed. For the details of [Network Protocols] window, see "[1.5.4 [Network Protocols Window] window of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Date/Time			
Network Interface	Network Protocols		Help
Management LAN Port Confi Network Protocols	Click the Apply Button to apply all changes.		
Refresh Rate	e neu die rippi, Butten to uppi, un ennigee.	-	
SNMP Configuration			
SSL SSH	Web (HTTP/HTTPS)		
Remote Server Management	HTTP	● Enable ○ Disable	
Access Control	HTTP Port#[80,1024-65535]	8081	
Alarm E-Mail	HTTPS	● Enable ○ Disable	
	HTTPS Port#[432,443,1024-65535]	432	
	TLS1.0/1.1	● Enable ○ Disable	
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	600	
	Telnet		
	Telnet	● Enable ○ Disable	
	Telnet Port#[23,1024-65535]	23	
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	600	
	SSH		
	SSH	● Enable ○ Disable	
	SSH Port#[22,1024-65535]	22	
	Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999]	600	
	SNMP		
	SNMP Agent	● Enable ○ Disable	
	Agent Port#[161,1024-65535]	161	
	SNMP Trap	Enable Obisable	

FIGURE 6.10 Example of [Network Protocols] Window

- 2. Set the [SSH] items.
- 3. Click the [Apply] button.

6.5.4 HTTPS Settings

The HTTPS of MMB is set. It can be set by using Administrator privileges.

To [Enable] the HTTPS, it is necessary to register a valid SSL certificate. When the valid SSL certificate is not registered and when it is attempted to [Enable] the HTTPS, error is displayed.

For the valid SSL certificate, specify the "attested certificate" or "self-attested certificate" that is generated on MMB window. There are cases where HTTPS is already set by our engineers. If the changes are not required, skip the HTTPS settings and proceed to the next settings.

Operations

1. Click [Network Configuration] – [Network Protocols].

→ [Network Protocols] window is displayed. For details about the [Network Protocols] window, see "1.5.4 [Network Protocols] window" of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

System Partition User Administration Network Configuration >Network Protocols Network Protocols Help Network Interface Management LAN Network Protocols ent LAN Port Config Click the Apply Button to apply all changes. SNMP Configuration Web (HTTP/HTTPS) 🗉 SSH ● Enable ○ Disable HTTP Remote Server Management Access Control HTTP Port#[80,1024-65535] 8081 HTTPS ● Enable ∩ Disable HTTPS Port#[432,443,1024-65535] 432 ● Enable ○ Disable TLS1.0/1.1 Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999] 600 Telnet Telnet ● Enable ○ Disable Telnet Port#[23,1024-65535] 23 Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999] 600 SSH SSH Enable Disable SSH Port#[22,1024-65535] 22 Timeout (sec) [0,60-9999] 600 SNMP \odot Enable \bigcirc Disable SNMP Agent Agent Port#[161,1024-65535] 161 • Enable O Disable SNMP Trap Trap Port#[162,1024-65535] 162 ^ Apply Cancel

FIGURE 6.11 Example of [Network Protocols] window

- 2. Set the items related to HTTPS and TLS1.0/1.1 of [HTTP].
- 3. Click the [Apply] button.

6.6 Schedule operations

For details about the schedule operations, see "9.3 Schedule operations" of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537).

CHAPTER 7 Power ON and OFF of the partition

7.1 Related to the power ON and OFF of the partition

The power ON and OFF of the partition is described.

- 7.1.1 Power ON of the partition
- 7.1.2 Power OFF of the partition

Further, the power ON and OFF of the partition can be operated by a Partition Operator account with Administrator or Operator privileges for the partition.

All the screenshots are display examples and the contents displayed by the system configuration are different.

7.1.1 Power ON of the partition

The procedure of power ON of the partition is explained.

Operations

1. Log-in to MMB Web-UI.

[MMB Web-UI] window is displayed.

2. Click [Partition] - [Power Control].

[Power Control] window is displayed. For details about the [Power Control] window, see "1.3.1 [Power Control] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

System Partition User Admin >Partition >Power Control	nistrat	ion	Network Config	uration Maint	enance		Logout
 Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Extended Socket Configura 			e r Control Power Control op		r more partitions, t	hen click the Apply b	Refresh Help
Reserved SB Configuration Power Management Setup	;	# P #	# Partition Name	Power Status	System Progress	Power Control	Force Power Off Delay Boot Selector
 Partition#0 Information ASR Control 	(0 -	free	Standby	Power Off	(Not specified)	□ 1 min No Override ✓
 Console Redirection Mode 		1 -	free	Standby	Power Off	(Not specified)	□ <u>1 min</u>
					Apply	Cancel	-
							N

FIGURE 7.1 Example of [Power Control] window

- 3. Select [Power On] for the [Power Control] of the partition number to which power is to be supplied and click the [Apply] button.
- 4. The dialog box for confirmation is displayed. Click [OK] button to continue the operation and [Cancel] button to cancel the operation.

Remark

- The warning is displayed when 'power is already supplied to the partition' and when 'the control specified for power cut off was failed'.
- After cutting the power of all the partitions, it cannot be supplied for some time.

7.1.2 Power OFF of the partition

The procedure of power OFF of the partition is explained.

In Windows, when the system is to be shut down from MMB Web-UI, SV Agent (ServerView Agent) is necessary. For the method of setting the SV Agent, see the description of "System shut down" tab of the ServerView Operations Manager Installation ServerView Agents for Windows.

In case of the below-mentioned status, see "11.2.10 Troubles while partition operations" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series Administration Manual (CA92344-0537) and confirm the contents.

- The MMB Web-UI displays [Error] for [Status] (information area) because either of the following was executed:
 - [Power Off], [Reset] or [Force Power Off] of the partition
 - Shutdown from the operating system
- "Read Error" is displayed for Part Number, Serial Number if the status of each component is displayed on the [MMB Web-UI] window.

Operations

- Log in to MMB Web-UI. The [MMB Web-UI] window is displayed.
- Click [Partition] [Power Control] from the MMB menu.
 [Power Control] window is displayed. [#] column is partition number. For details on [Power Control] window, see
 [1.3.1 [Power Control] window" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

FIGURE 7.2 Example of [Power Control] window

System Partition User Admit >Partition >Power Control	nistra	atic	on]	Network Config	uration <u>Maint</u>	enance		Logout	~
 Power Control Schedule Console Redirection Setup Partition Configuration Extended Socket Configuration 		Power Control Select a Power Control option for one or more partitions, then click the Apply button to take effect.							
 Reserved SB Configuration Power Management Setup 		#	P#	Partition Name	Power Status	System Progress	Power Control	Force Power Off Delay Boot Selector	
 Partition#0 Information ASR Control 		0	-	free	Standby	Power Off	(Not specified)	No Override	
Console Redirection Mode		1	-	free	Standby	Power Off	(Not specified)		
						· · · · · ·			
	Apply Cancel								
								~	

3. Select [Power Off] for the [Power Control] for the partition number of which power is to be cut off and click the [Apply] button.

The power supply of the specified partition is cut off.

Remark

If the operating system supports ACPI and [Power Off] is selected, then the power is automatically cut off on shutting down the operating system. However, even if the operating system supports ACPI, you may be unable to power off the partition as long as an application that does not support it is running on the operating system. It depends on the specifications of the operating system and the application. For details, see the manual of the operating system or the application.

If the operating system is not compatible to ACPI, according to the power cut off operations, the power is cut off without shutting down the operating system.

Therefore, due to the above-mentioned reasons, shut down the partition in the operating system

Appendix A List of setting items

See "Appendix A list of setting items" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

A.1 Setting items of MMB

See "A.1.Setting items of MMB Web-UI" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

A.2 Setting items of UEFI

See "A.2. Setting items of UEFI" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

A.3 Setting items of BMC

See "A.3.Setting items of video redirection" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Appendix B About software

For details about the software bundled with the hardware of the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series, see "3.3 Bundled software" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series General Description (CA92344-0534).

Appendix C Configuring the SAN boot environment

For details on developing the SAN boot environment, see PRIMEQUEST 2000 Series SAN Boot Environment Configuration Manual

Appendix D Notes on VMware installation

This appendix describes how to install VMware vSphere using the RAID environment configured in internal HDD/SSD and it also provides notes on installation. Hereafter, VMware vSphere is mentioned as VMware.

D.1 Building the RAID environment in the VMware internal

disk.

In the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series, RAID 0, RAID1, RAID 1E, RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, RAID 50, RAID 60 are supported in internal HDD/SSD.

For details on building a RAID configuration using internal hard disks, see the SAS RAID controller Guide below.

- 12Gb/s MegaRAID SAS Software

D.2 Installing VMware Bundled Software

The bundled software is stored in ServerView Suite DVD(Tools). The files are copied from ServerView Suite DVD(Tools) and then used.

Further, the bundled software necessary for VMware vSphere are as mentioned below.

TABLE D.1 Installation of the software attached to VMware

Bundled software	Installation destination		
ServerView ESXi CIM Provider	VMware ESXi		

D.3 Setting of PCI Bus mode

VMware vShere 5 does not support segment mode. Set "PCI Address mode" menu in MMB Web-UI to PCI Bus mode.

VMware vShere 6 supports segment mode, but segment mode and vt-d function cannot be used at the same time for versions earlier than ESXi 6.0.0b.

- If vt-d function is used for versions earlier than ESXi 6.0.0b, set "PCI Address mode" menu in MMB Web-UI to PCI Bus mode. For the detail of setting PCI Address mode, see "[Mode] window" of "1.3.9 [Partition#x] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).
- If segment mode is used for VMware vShere 6, disable vt-d function in EFI menu. For the detail of setting PCI Address mode, see "[Mode] window" of "3.4.3 [CPU Configuration] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

D.4 Setting of Address Range Mirror

VMware vSphere 6.5 or later supports Address Range Mirror. Address Range Mirror is configured in BIOS menu. For the detail of setting, see "3.4.6 [Memory Configuration] menu" of PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference (CA92344-0539).

Appendix E Setting up the NTP Server (Windows)

This appendix describes how to specify and set of an NTP server for a specific Windows operating system.

This appendix is not needed for Active Directory member servers.

Active Directory member servers automatically synchronize the system clock with the domain controller.

E.1 Overview of NTP Client Settings

This appendix describes procedures for settings synchronizing the system clock with an NTP server for operating systems consisting of the following:

- Windows Server 2016
- Windows Server 2012 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Server 2008 R2

Remark

In the PRIMEQUEST 2000 series, the system time of a partition is kept in the Home SB. Therefore, if the Home SB of a partition is replaced during maintenance or switched by the reserved SB function, the system time of the partition may become incorrect.

In Windows Server 2008 and earlier, time was synchronized at startup, however in Windows Server 2008 R2 and later, time is not synchronized at startup. Please make the following settings so that the time lag is corrected immediately.

In Windows Server 2016, the standard value has been changed so that time synchronization is performed at shorter intervals than conventional OS. However, if you change NTP server which the system uses, the time synchronization interval becomes longer. To shorten the time synchronization interval after changing the setting, it is necessary to set the time synchronization interval when you change the setting of NTP server.

Task name	Task description
Specifying an NTP Server	Specify an NTP server in [Control Panel] - [Date and Time].
Synchronization Interval Setting	Set the following registry value with the Registry Editor to set a
	synchronization interval of 15 minutes:
	HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE¥SYSTEM¥CurrentControlSet
	¥Services¥W32Time¥TimeProviders¥NtpClient
	* There is no line feed in the above registry key.
	name: SpecialPollInterval
	type: REG_DWORD
	value: 900 (decimal)
Startup Settings of NTP Service	Set the Windows Time service to start automatically in
	[Computer Management] - [Services and Applications] -
	[Services]
Event Task Settings	Register the following in Task Scheduler to synchronize with
	the System time when the time can be acquired from an NTP
	server:
	Log: "System", Source: "Time-Service", ID:37
	The "w32tm /resync" command will run.

Table E.1 Settings for system clock synchronization

For detailed procedures, see following chapter:

- E.3 NTP Settings in Windows Server 2012 R2
- E.4 NTP Settings in Windows Server 2008 R2

E.2 NTP Settings in Windows Server 2016

The procedures in this chapter require Administrator privileges. All screenshots are showing examples, and the actually displayed contents may vary depending on the system configuration and other factors.

E.2.1 Specifying an NTP Server

1. Select [Control Panel] - [Set the time and date]. [Date and Time] dialog box appears.

Figure E.1 [Date and Time] window (1)

💣 Date and Time				×
Date and Time Addit	ional Clocks	Internet Time		
Time zone	F	ate: riday, January : ime: :58:41 PM	27, 2017 Change date and time	
(UTC+09:00) Osal	(a, Sapporo,	Tokyo		
			Change time zone	
Daylight Saving T	ïme is not c	observed by thi	is time zone.	
		ОК	Cancel App	ly

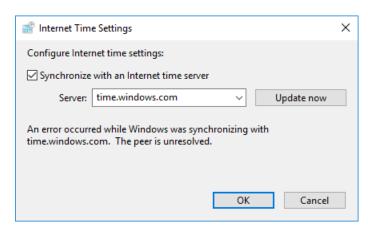
2. Click [Change settings] button on [Internet Time] tab.

Figure E.2 [Date and Time] window (2)

💣 Date and Ti	me			×
Date and Time	Additional Clocks	Internet Time		
This comput 'time.windo	ter is set to autom ws.com'.	natically synchr	onize with	
Next synchro	onization: 1/27/20)17 at 3:09 PM		
	urred while Wind vs.com. The peer		ronizing with	
			Change set	ttings
		ОК	Cancel	Apply

- 3. Set the following parameters in [Internet Time Settings] dialog box.
 - [Synchronize with an Internet time server]: Check the check box.
 - [Server]: Enter an NTP server name.

Figure E.3 [Internet Time Settings] dialog box

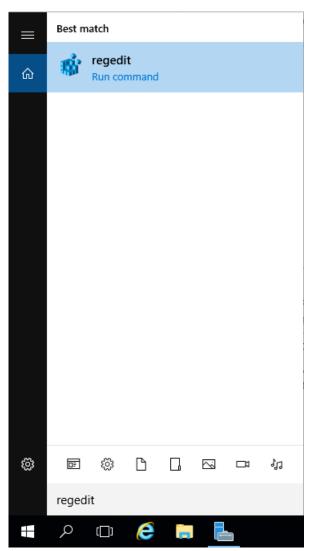


- 4. Click [OK] button to close [Internet Time Settings] dialog box.
- 5. Click [OK] button to close [Date and Time] dialog box.

E.2.2 Synchronization Interval and Startup Settings of NTP Service

1. Enter "regedit" in [Search] to start the Registry Editor.

Figure E.4 [Registry Editor] selection window

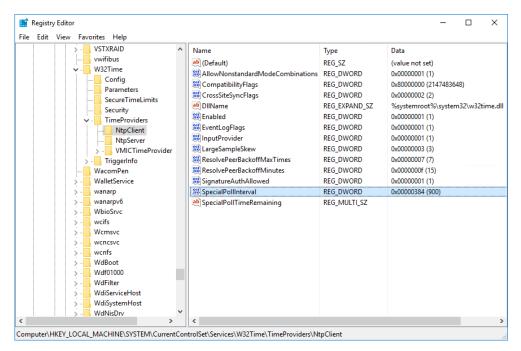


2. Set the following registory value.

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE¥SYSTEM¥CurrentControlSet¥Services¥W32Time¥TimeProviders¥NtpClient

Name: SpecialPollInterval, Type: REG_DWORD, Data:900(decimal)

Figure E.5 [Registry Editor] window



- 3. Close the Registry Editor.
- 4. Open [Start] [Administrative Tools] [Services].

Figure E.6 [Services] window

le Action View	Help						
•	R 📑 🛛 🖬 🕨 🔲 💷 🕨						
Services (Local)	Services (Local)						
	Windows Time	Name	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
	Stop the service Restart the service Description: Maintains date and time synchronization on all clients and servers in the network. If this service is stopped, date and time synchronization will be unavailable. If this service is disabled, any services that explicitly depend on it will fail to start.	Windows Event Log Windows Firewall Windows Fort Cache Service Windows Insider Service Windows Insider Service Windows Installer Windows Installer Windows Mobile Hotspot S Windows Mobile Hotspot S Windows Mobile Installer Windows Push Notification Windows Push Notification Windows Push Notification Windows Pearch Windows Search	Provides im wisvc Adds, modi Provides inf Provides a c Provides th Enables inst This service	-	Automatic Automatic Automatic Manual Manual Manual (Trig Automatic Manual Automatic Manual Automatic Manual Automatic Disabled	Local Service Local Service Local Service Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Local Syste Network S Network S	
		Windows Search Windows Time Windows Update WinHTTP Web Proxy Auto Wired AutoConfig Wired AutoConfig Wired AutoConfig Workstation Xbox Live Auth Manager Xbox Live Game Save	Maintains d Enables the	Running Running Running	Automatic (T Manual (Trig Manual Manual Manual Automatic Manual Manual (Trig		

- 5. Right-click the Windows Time service. Select [Properties] from the context menu.
- 6. Set "Automatic (Delayed Start)" in [Startup type] in [Windows Time Properties] dialog box.

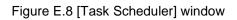
Figure E.7 [Windows Time Properties] window

Windows Time Properties (Local Computer)						Х	
General	Log On	Deserves	Dependencie				
General	Log Un	Recovery	Dependencie	5			
Service	name:	W32Time					
Display	name:	Windows 1	lìme				
Descript	Description: Maintains date and time synchronization on all A						
		clients and	servers in the	network. If th	is service is	۷	
Path to	executabl	e:					
C:\Wind	dows\syst	em32\svcho	st.exe -k Loca	Service			
Startup	type:	Automatic	(Delayed Start	.)		\sim	
Service	status:	Running					
S	itart	Stop)	Pause	Resume		
You car from her		he start para	meters that app	oly when you	start the servi	ice	
Start pa	irameters:						
			OK	C			
			OK	Cance	Ap	oply	

- 7. If the W32Time service is stopped, click [Start] button. If the W32Time service is running, click [Stop] button to pause in the service, and then click [Start] button.
- 8. Clich [OK] button, and then close [Windows Time Properties] dialog box.

E.2.3 Event Task Settings

1. Open [Start] - [Administrative Tools] - [Task Scheduler].



Task Scheduler							- 🗆	\times
File Action View Help								
						Act	tions	
> 🔀 Task Scheduler Library					~	Tas	sk Scheduler (Local)	•
Overview of Task Sched	uler			-			Connect to Another C.	
	sk Scheduler to create and ma					1	Create Basic Task	
out automatica	Illy at the times you specify. T	o begin, click a cor	mmand in the Acti	ion menu.		•	Create Task	
	d in folders in the Task Schedu						Import Task	
individual task, Action menu.	select the task in the Task Sch	eduler Library and	click on a comma	and in the			Display All Running Ta	
					_			
Task Status				-			AT Service Account Co	
Shahar of the day block has	and the state of the state of the state of the		Last 24	hours v			View	
Status of tasks that ha	ve started in the following tim	e period:	LdSL 24	v nours v				
Summary: 0 total - 0 m	unning, 0 succeeded, 0 stoppe	d, 0 failed						
						?	Help	
Task Name	Run Result	Run Start	Run End	Triggered By				
lask Name	Kun Kesult	Kun Start	Kun End	Inggered By				
<				>				
Active Tasks								
Active rusio								
Active tasks are tasks	that are currently enabled and	I have not expired.			~			
Last refreshed at 1/27/20	17 3:23:08 PM			Refresh				

- 2. Select [Create Basic Task] at the right of the window. [Create Basic Task Wizard] appears.
- 3. Enter a chosen task name in [Name] on the [Create a Basic Task] screen, and click the [Next] button. Example: On the screen below, "ntp-sync" is an arbitrary task name.

Figure E.9 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Create a Basic Task)

Create Basic Task Wizard			×
Create a Basic Task	¢		
Create a Basic Task	Use this wizar	d to quickly schedule a common task. For more advanced options or settings ple task actions or triggers, use the Create Task command in the Actions pane.	
Trigger Action	Name:	ntp-sync	
Finish	Description:		
		< Back Next > Cance	4

4. Select "When a specific event is logged" on [Task Trigger] screen. Click [Next] button.

Figure E.10 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Task Trigger)

Create Basic Task Wizard		\times
🔟 Task Trigger		
Create a Basic Task Trigger When an Event Is Logged Action Finish	 When do you want the task to start? Daily Weekly Monthly One time When the computer starts When I log on When a specific event is logged 	
	< Back Next > Ca	ncel

- 5. [When an Event Is Logged] screen appears. Set the following parameters.
 - [Log]: System, [Source]: Time-Service, [Event ID]: 37

Figure E.11 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When an Event Is Logged)

Create Basic Task Wizard			×
When a Specific Eve	ent Is Log	ged	
Create a Basic Task			
Trigger	Log:	System 🗸	
When an Event Is Logged	Source:	Time-Service 🗸	
Action	Event ID:	37	
Finish	Erent Ibr		
		< Back Next > (Cancel

- 6. Click [Next] button.
- 7. Select "Start a program" on [Action] screen. Click the [Next] button.

Figure E.12 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action)

Create Basic Task Wizard				×
Direction				
Create a Basic Task Trigger When an Event Is Logged	What action do you want the task to perform?			
Action	Start a program			
Finish	Send an e-mail (deprecated)			
	 Display a message (deprecated) 			
		< Back	Next >	Cancel

- 8. Set the following parameters on [Start a Program] screen.
 - [Program/script]: %SystemRoot%¥w32tm.exe
 - [Add arguments] (optional): /resync

Figure E.13 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program)

Create Basic Task Wizard			>
Create a Basic Task Trigger When an Event Is Logged Action	Program/script: %SystemRoot%\System32\w32	tm.exe	Browse
Start a Program Finish	Add arguments (optional): Start in (optional):		/resync
		< Back	Next > Cancel

- 9. Click [Next] button.
- 10. Check the [Open the Properties dialog for this task when I click Finish] check box on the [Summary] screen.

Figure E.14 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Finish)

Create Basic Task Wizard		×
Summary		
Create a Basic Task		
Trigger	Name:	ntp-sync
When an Event Is Logged	Description:	
Action	Description	
Start a Program		
Finish		
	Trigger:	On an event; On event - Log: System, Source: Microsoft-Windows-Time-Serv
	Action:	Start a program; %SystemRoot%\System32\w32tm.exe /resync
		Properties dialog for this task when I click Finish
	When you cli	ick Finish, the new task will be created and added to your Windows schedule.
		< Back Finish Cancel
		Concer

11. Click [Finish] button.

12. Click [Change User or Group] button in the [Properties] dialog box.

Figure E.15 [Properties] di	alog box
-----------------------------	----------

🕒 ntp-sync	Properti	ies (Local	Computer)							×
General Tr	iggers	Actions	Condition	s Settings	s H	listory (di	sabled)				
Name:	ntp-	sync									
Location:	١.										
Author:			\Adr	ninistrator							
Descriptior	1:										
-Security o	ptions										
When rur	nning th	e task, us	e the follo	ving user ac	ccou	unt:					
Administ	rator								Change Use	r or Group	
Run o	nly whe	n user is l	ogged on								
O Run w	hether u	user is log	ged on or	not							
Do	not sto	ore passwo	ord. The ta	sk will only	hav	e access	to local com	puter re	esources.		
🗌 Run w	ith high	est privile	ges								
🗌 Hidden		Configu	re for: W	ndows Vista	a™, \	Windows	Server™ 2008	В			\sim
									ОК	Cancel	

[Select User or Group] dialog box appears. Set the following parameter.
 [Enter the object name to select]: System

Figure E.16 [Select User or Group] window

Select User or Group	×
Select this object type: User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types
From this location: Enter the object name to select (examples):	Locations
SYSTEM.	Check Names
Advanced OK	Cancel

- 14. Click [OK] button.
- 15. Click [Change User or Group] button in [Properties] dialog box.

E.3 NTP Settings in Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2012

The procedures in this chapter require Administrator privileges.

All screenshots are showing examples, and the actually displayed contents may vary depending on the system configuration and other factors.

E.3.1 Specifying an NTP Server

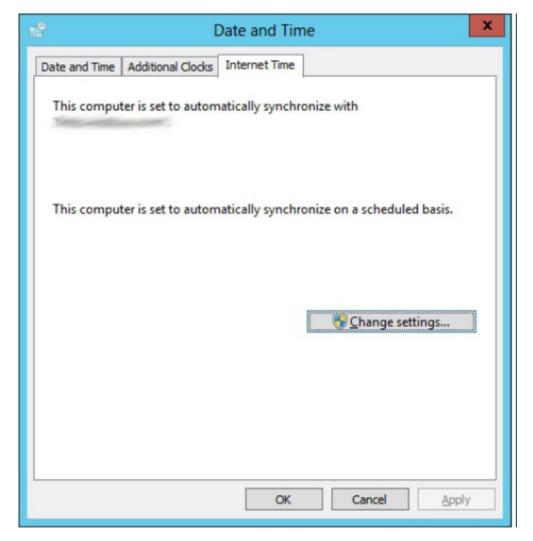
1. Select [Control Panel] - [Set the time and date]. [Date and Time] dialog box appears.

FIGURE E.0.17 [Date and Time] window (1)

Date and Time	x
Date and Time Additional Clocks Internet Time	
Date: Thursday, November 1, 2012 Time: 11:27:46 PM	[Terrenet]
Time zone	-
(UTC-08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada) Change time <u>z</u> one	1
Daylight Saving Time ends on Sunday, November 4, 2012 at 2:00 AM. The clock is set to go back 1 hour at that time.	
OK Cancel Apply	

2. Click [Change settings] button on [Internet Time] tab.

FIGURE E.0.18 [Da	te and Time] window (2	2)
-------------------	------------------------	----



- 3. Set the following parameters in [Internet Time Settings] dialog box.
 - [Synchronize with an Internet time server]: Check the check box.
 - [Server]: Enter an NTP server name.

FIGURE E.0.19 [Internet Time Settings] window

1	Internet Time Settings	x
Configure Inte	rnet time settings:	
Synchronize	e with an Internet time server	
S <u>e</u> rver:	← Update now	
This computer	is set to automatically synchronize on a scheduled basis.	
	OK Cancel	

- 4. Click [OK] button to close [Internet Time Settings] dialog box.
- 5. Click [OK] button to close [Date and Time] dialog box.

E.3.2 Synchronization Interval and Startup Settings of NTP Service

1. Enter "regedit" in [Search] to start the Registry Editor.

FIGURE E.0.20 [Registry Editor] selection window

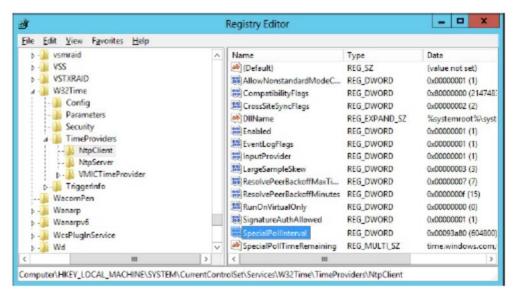
Apps Results for "regedit"	Search Apps regedit P
-	Apps 1
	Settings 0
	Files 0
	Internet Explorer

2. Open the following key, and set 900 for the SpecialPollInterval value.

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE¥SYSTEM¥CurrentControlSet¥Services¥W32Time¥TimeProviders¥NtpClient

"SpecialPollInterval" Type: REG_DWORD, Data: 900 (decimal)

FIGURE E.0.21 [Registry Editor] window



- 3. Close the Registry Editor.
- 4. Open [Start] [Administrative Tools] [Services].

FIGURE F.6 [Services] window

Eile Action View	Help					
🖛 🏟 📅 🖬 🖉	3 🗟 📲 🖬 🖬 🖬	Ð				
🖏 Services (Local)	Name A	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
	California Windows Firewall	Windows F	Running	Automatic	Local Service	
	🔍 Windows Font Cache Ser	Optimizes	Running	Automatic	Local Service	
	🔍 Windows Installer	Adids, mod		Manual	Local System	
	🔍 Windows Licensing Moni	This servic	Running	Automatic	Local System Local System	
	😪 Windows Management I	Provides a	Running	Automatic		
	Q Windows Modules Installer	Enables ins		Manual	Local System	
	🔍 Windows Remote Manag	Windows	Running	Automatic	Network Service	
	Windows Store Service (Provides in		Manual (Trigger	Local Service	
	Windows Time	Maintains		Manual (Trigger Manual	Local Service Local System	
	🔍 Windows Update	Enables th				
	WinHTTP Web Proxy Aut	WinHTTP i The Wired		Manual	Local Service	
	Wired AutoConfig			Manual	Local System	
	WMI Performance Adapter	Provides p		Manual	Local System	
	Workstation	Creates an	Running	Automatic	Network Service	
	Estended A Standard					

- 5. Right-click the Windows Time service. Select [Properties] from the context menu.
- 6. Set "Automatic (Delayed Start)" in [Startup type] in the [Windows Time Properties] dialog box.

General	Log On	Recovery	Depender	ncies	
Service	name:	W32Time			
Display	name:	Windows	Time		
Descrip	tion:			ne synchronizati the network. If t	
Path to	executabl	e:			
	dows\syst	em32\svcho	st.exe + La	calService	
		em32\svcho	st.exe + La	ocalService	~
C:\Wind Startup <u>Help me</u>	type:				~
C:\Wind Startup Help me Service	typ <u>e</u> : e configure	Manual e service sta	tup options		∨ <u>R</u> esume

FIGURE E.0.22 [Windows Time Properties] window

- 7. If the W32Time service is stopped, click the [Start] button.
- 8. If the W32Time service is running, click the [Stop] button to pause in the service, and then click the [Start] button.

E.3.3 Event Task Settings

1. Open [Start] - [Administrative Tools] - [Task Scheduler].

FIGURE E.0.23 [Task Scheduler] window

2	Task Scheduler		- 0 ×
Eile Action View Help			
Task Scheduler (Local)			Activo
p 📸 Task Scheduler Library	You can use lask Scheduler to create and manage common teals that your computer will carry automatic teal to create an end of the team you appetly. To begin, teak a command in the Action mean. Tasks are stored in folders in the Task Scheduler Library. To view or perform an operation on an individual task, select the task in the Task Scheduler Library and dick on a command in the Action mean.		Task Scheduler (Local) Cornect to Another Com Crante Basic Task Fronte Task Import Task Cliptig All Burning Tasks Endle All Tasks History
	Status of tasks that have started in the following time period: Last 24 hours	~	AT Service Account Confi
	Summary: O total - O running, O cucceeded, O clopped, O failed		View
			Refeat
	Tank Name Run Renub Run Start Run End Triggand By		и нер
	Active Teslo		
	Active tasks are tasks that are currently enabled and have not expired. Summary: 30 total	1	
	Task Name Nest Run Time Triggers Location		
	Last refreshed at 11/1/2012 1143/34 PM	8	

2. Select [Create Basic Task] at the right of the window. [Create Basic Task Wizard] appears.

3. Enter a chosen task name in [Name] on the [Create a Basic Task] screen, and click the [Next] button. Example: On the screen below, "ntp-sync" is an arbitrary task name.

FIGURE E.0.24 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Create a Basic Task)

	Create I	Basic Task Wizard
Create a	Basic Task	
Create a Basic Task Trigger		y schedule a common task. For more advanced options or settings ions or triggers, use the Create Task command in the Actions pane.
Action	N <u>a</u> me ntp-sync	
Finish	Description:	
		< Back: Next > Cancel

4. Select "When a specific event is logged" on the [Task Trigger] screen. Click the [Next] button.

FIGURE E.0.25 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Task Trigger)

	Create Basic Task Wizard
🕘 Task Trigger	
Create a Basic Task Trigger When an Event Is Logged Action Finish	When do you want the task to start?

- 5. [When a Specific Event Is Logged] screen appears. Set the following parameters.
 - Log]: System
 - [Source]: Time-Service
 - [Event ID]: 37

FIGURE E.0.26 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged)

		Create Basic Task Wizard	x
When a Specific Ev	ent Is Logi	ged	
Create a Basic Task Trigger	L <u>o</u> g:	System 🗸	
When an Event is Logged	Source	Time-Service v	
Action Finish	Event ID:	37	
		< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

Click the [Next] button.

6. Select "Start a program" on the [Action] screen. Click the [Next] button.

FIGURE E.0.27 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action)

	Create Basic Task Wizard		x
Action			
Create a Basic Task Trigger When an Event Is Logged	What action do you want the task to perform?		
Action	Start a program		
Finish	O Send an e-mail (deprecated)		
	O Display a message (deprecated)		
	< <u>B</u> a	ck <u>N</u> ext > Car	ncel

- 7. Set the following parameters on the [Start a Program] screen.
 - [Program/script]: %SystemRoot%¥w32tm.exe
 - [Add arguments] (optional): /resync

FIGURE E.0.28 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program)

	Create Basic Task W	lizard		×
5 Start a Program				
Create a Basic Task Trigger	Program/script			
When an Event Is Logged Action	%5ystemRoot%\w32tm.exe		Browse	
Start a Program Finish	Add arguments (optional): S <u>t</u> art in (optional):		resync	
		< <u>B</u> ack	Next > Can	icel

8. Click the [Next] button.

Check the [Open the Properties dialog for this task when I click Finish] check box on the [Summary] screen.

		Create Basic Task Wizard
🖲 Summary		
Create a Basic Task Trigger When an Event Is Logged Action Start a Program Finish	Name: Description:	http://nc
	Trigger:	On an event; On event - Log: System, Source: Microsoft-Windows-Time-Ser
	Action:	Start a program; %SystemRoot%\w32tm.exe /resync
	the second s	Properties dialog for this task when I click Finish ick Finish, the new task will be created and added to your Windows schedule.

FIGURE E.0.29 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Summary)

Click the [Finish] button.

9. Click the [Change User or Group] button in the [Properties] dialog box.

FIGURE E.0.30 [Properties] dialog box

٩	nt	p-sync Properties (Local Computer)		x
General Trig	gers Actions Cond	tions Settings History		
Na <u>m</u> e:	ntp-sync			
Location:	1			
Author:	today and and the second	Administrator		
Description:				
Security op	tions			
When run	ning the task, use the fo			
Vanish-e-e-	Administrat	or	Change User or G	iroup
<u>R</u> un on	ly when user is logged	n		
ORun wh	ether user is logged on	or not		
🗌 Do	not store password. Th	e task will only have access to local compute	er resources.	
🗌 Run wit	h highest privileges			
🗌 Hidd <u>e</u> n	<u>Configure for:</u>	Windows Vista™, Windows Server™ 2008		v
		[ОК	Cancel

- 10. [Select User or Group] dialog box appears. Set the following parameter.
 - [Enter the object name to select]: System

FIGURE E.0.31 [Select User or Group] window

	Select User or Group	? X
Select this object type:		
User, Group, or Built-in s	security principal	Object Types
From this location:		
Willing - Bullen and Do growth		Locations
Enter the object name to	select (<u>examples</u>):	
System		Check Names
Advanced	0	K Cancel
Auvanced	0	Cancel

Click [OK] button.

11. Click the [Change User or Group] button in the [Properties] dialog box.

E.4 NTP Settings in Windows Server 2008 R2

The procedures in this chapter require Administrator privileges. All screenshots are display examples, and the actually displayed contents vary depending on the system configuration and other factors.

E.4.1 Specifying an NTP Server

1. Select [Control Panel] - [Set the time and date]. The [Date and Time] dialog box appears.

FIGURE E.0.32 [Date and Time] window (1)

Date and Time		×
Date and Time Additional Clock	s Internet Time	
Time zone	Date: Tuesday, July 06, 2010 Time 10:30:58 PM	te and time
(UTC-08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada)	
	Change tir	me zone
Daylight Saving Time ends clock is set to go back 1 ho	on Sunday, November 07, 2010 a our at that time.	at 2:00 AM. The
₩ Notify me when the clo	ock changes	
Get more time zone inform	ation online	
How do I set the clock and	time zone?	
	OK Cancel	Appy

2. Click the [Change settings] button on the [Internet Time] tab

FIGURE E.0.33 [Date and Time] window (2)

Date and Time	
Date and Time Additional Clocks Internet Time	
This computer is set to automatically synchronize with	
Next synchronization: 7/13/2010 at 10:34 PM	
The clock was successfully synchronized with 7/6/2010 at 10:34 PM.	on
Change	e settings
What is Internet time synchronization?	
OK Cancel	Apply

- 3. Set the following parameters in the [Internet Time Settings] dialog box.
 - [Synchronize with an Internet time server]: Check the check box.
 - [Server]: Enter an NTP server name.

FIGURE E.0.34 [Internet Time Settings] window

and in the later	and time anttinen.		
oningure inter	net time settings:		
Synchronize	with an Internet time server		
S <u>e</u> rver:	ALE INFORMATION	•	Update now
	successfully synchronized with 34 PM.	(BRELING	ig film and the on
	the second	(Bartine P	ig Riscould on
he clock was /6/2010 at 10:1	the second	1962-147	i Tha i sin o n

- 4. Click the [OK] button to close the [Internet Time Settings] dialog box.
- 5. Click the [OK] button to close the [Date and Time] dialog box.

E.4.2 Synchronization Interval and Startup Settings of NTP Service

1. Select [Start] - [Run]. Enter "regedit.exe" in the dialog box, and click the [OK] button. The Registry Editor appears.

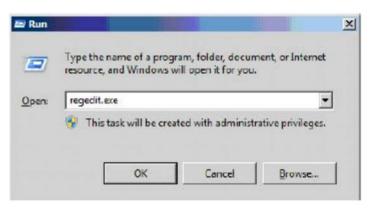


FIGURE E.0.35 [Run] window

2. Open the following key, and set 900 for the SpecialPollInterval value.

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE¥SYSTEM¥CurrentControlSet¥Services¥W32Time
¥TimeProviders¥NtpClient

"SpetcialPollInterval" Type: REG_DWORD, Data: 900 (decimal)

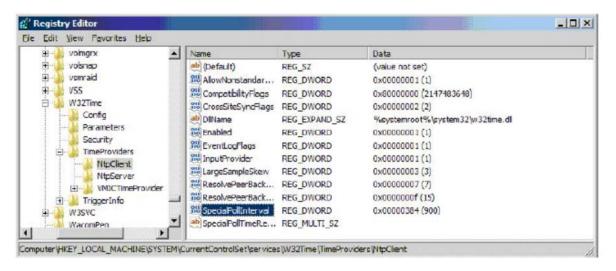


FIGURE E.0.36 [Registry Editor] window

3. Close the Registry Editor.

4. Open [Start] - [Administrative Tools] - [Services].

Services (Local)	Q Services (Local)						
	Windows Time	Name +	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As	
	Stop the service Restart the service	Windows Firewall Windows Font Cac	Windows Fi Optimizes Adds, modi	Started	Automatic Manual Manual	Local Service Local Service Local System	
	Description: Maintains date and time synchronization on all clients and servers in the network.	Windows Managem Windows Modules I Windows Remote M	Provides a Enables ins Windows R	Started Started Started	Automatic Manual Automatic (D	Local System Local System Network S	
	If this service is stopped, date and time	Windows Time	Maintains d	Started	Manual	Local Service	
	synchronization will be unavailable. If this service is disabled, any services that explicitly depend on it will fail to start.	Windows Update WINHTTP Web Prox Wired AutoConfig WMI Performance	Enables th WINHTTP I The Wired Provides p	Started	Automatic (D Manual Manual Manual	Local System Local Service Local System Local System	

FIGURE E.0.37 [Services] window

5. Right-click the Windows Time service. Select [Properties] from the context menu.

6. Set "Automatic (Delayed Start)" in [Startup Type] in the [Windows Time Properties] dialog box.

Service name:	W32Time
Display name:	Windows Time
Description:	Maintains date and time synchronization on all clients and servers in the network. If this service is stopped,
Path to executab	ble: tem32\svchost.exe -k LocalService
a second and a second and a	
Startup typ <u>e</u> :	Automatic (Delayed Start)
Startup typ <u>e</u> :	
Startup typ <u>e</u> :	Automatic (Delayed Start)
Startup typ <u>e</u> : Help me configur	Automatic (Delayed Start)
Startup typ <u>e</u> : Help me configur Service status: <u>S</u> tart	Automatic (Delayed Start)

FIGURE E.0.38 [Windows Time Properties] window

- If the W32Time service is stopped, click the [Start] button.
 If the W32Time service is running, click the [Stop] button to pause in the service, and then click the [Start] button.
- 8. Click the [OK] button to close the [Windows Time Properties] dialog box.

E.4.3 Event Task Settings

1. Open [Start] - [Administrative Tools] - [Task Scheduler].

FIGURE E.0.39 [Task Scheduler] window

Tesk Scheduler Local	Task Scheduler Summary (Last ref	ieshed: 7/6/2010 11:02	16 PM)	Actions
	Overview of Task Scheduler You can use Task Sche common tasks that you sutematically at the tir a command in the Acti Tasks are stored in feld larger Towner on out	ur computer will carry nes you specify. To be ion menu. lers in the Task Schedu	out gin, click	Tesk Scheduler (Local) Connect to Another Com Image: Create Basic Task Create Task Import Task Display All Running Tasks
	Task Status Status of tasks that have starte	atests (constru	•	AT Service Account Confi
	Summary: 0 total - 0 running.			Refiesh
	Task Name	Run Result	Run Start	
				1

2. Select [Create Basic Task] at the right of the window. [Create Basic Task Wizard] appears.

3. Enter a chosen task name in [Name] on the [Create a Basic Task] screen, and click the [Next] button. Example: On the screen below, "ntp-sync" is an arbitrary task name.

FIGURE E.0.40 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Create a Basic Task)

eate a Basic Task	Use this wize	ard to quickly schedule a com	mon task. For more ad	vanced options (or setting
lgger ction	such as mult Name	tiple task actions or triggers, un ntp-sync	se the Create Task com	mand in the Act	tions pane
nish	Description:				

 Select "When a specific event is logged" on the [Task Trigger] screen. Click the [Next] button FIGURE E.0.41 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Task Trigger)

Create Basic Task Wizard	l I	8 8		100		×
Task Trigger						
Create a Basic Task	When do you want	the task to start	?			
Trigger	C Daily					
When an Event Is Logged Action	C Weekty					
Finish	C Monthly					
	<u>○</u> ne time					
	C When the comp	uter starts				
	C When I log on					
	When a specific	event is logged				
				< Back	Next >	Cancel

5. [When a Specific Event Is Logged] screen appears. Set the following parameters.

- [Log]: System
- [Source]: Time-Service
- [Event ID]: 37

FIGURE E.0.42 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (When a Specific Event Is Logged)

eate a Bosic Tosk	Logi	System	-	
gger When an Event Is Logged	Source	Time-Service	-	
tion ish	Event ID:			
211				

Click the [Next] button.

6. Select "Start a program" on the [Action] screen. Click the [Next] button.

FIGURE E.0.43 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Action)

Color Action				
Create a Basic Task Trigger When an Event Is Logged	What action do you want t	the task to perform?		
Action	Start a program			
Finish	C Send an e-mail			
	C Display a <u>m</u> essage			

- 7. Set the following parameters on the [Start a Program] screen.
 - [Program/script]: %SystemRoot%¥System32¥w32tm.exe
 - [Add arguments] (optional): /resync

FIGURE E.0.44 [Create Basic Task Wizard] window (Start a Program)

Create Basic Task Wizard			×
Start a Program			
Create a Basic Task Trigger	0		
When an Event Is Logged	Program/script %SystemRoot%\System32\w32tm.exe		.
Action	hasystemicotra (systemaz (waztm.exe		Browse
Start a Program	Add arguments (optional):	/resynd	
Finish	- Start in (optional):		
		< Back Next	> Cancel

Click the [Next] button.

8. Check the [Open the Properties dialog for this task when I click Finish] check box on the [Summary] screen.

reate Basic Task Wizard			TSH.		1
Summary					
Create a Basic Task					
Trigger	Name:	ntp-sync			
When an Event Is Logged	Description:				
Action	ocsemption				
Start a Program					
inish		m = m			
		1 //L 3 8/ - 8 -			
	Trigger:	On an event; On event - Log:	System, Source: Tim	ne-Service, Even	et ID: 37
	Trigger: Action:	On an event; On event - Log: Start a program; %SystemRod			et ID: 37
	Action:	Start a program; %SystemRo	ot%\System32\w32ti		et ID: 37
	Action:		ot%\System32\w32ti when I click Finish	n.exe /resync	
	Action:	Start a program; %SystemRo Properties dialog for this task v	ot%\System32\w32ti when I click Finish	n.exe /resync	

Click the [Finish] button.

9. Click the [Change User or Group] button in the [Properties] dialog box.

Name:	ntp-sync			
Location: Author:	\ WIN-UEARO6IBVTQ	Administrator		
<u>Description</u> :				
- Security op		- 11		
	O6EVTQ\Administrati	ollowing user account: or	Change User or Group	٦
• Run on	ly when user is logged	on		-
C Run wh	ether user is logged or	n ar not		
D 00	notistore password. T	ne task will only have access to local compu	ter resources,	
🗖 Run wjt	h highest privileges			

FIGURE E.0.46 [Properties] dialog box

10. [Select User or Group] dialog box appears.

Set the following parameter.

- [Enter the object name to select]: System

FIGURE E.0.47 [Select User or Group] window

elect User or Group	2
Select this object type:	
User, Group, or Built-in security principal	Object Types
From this location:	
WIN-UEARO6I3VTQ	Locations
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>):	
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>): System	Check Names
Enter the object name to select (<u>examples</u>): System	

Click the [OK] button.

Appendix F Starting HII Configuration Utility

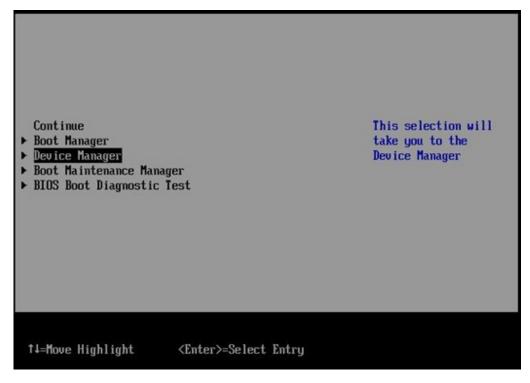
This appendix describes how to start HII Configuration Utility.

F.1 Staring HII Configuration Utility

The procedures in this chapter require Administrator privileges.

1. Select [Device Manager] and press [Enter] key in [Boot Manager] window.

FIGURE F.0.1 [Boot Manager] window



2. Select RAID Controller and Press [Enter] key in [Device Manager] window. Then HII Configuration Utility

Remark

If there are multiple identical SAS RAID Controllers in the partition, they are displayed some identical items in [Device Manager] window. Identify terget SAS RAID Controller by checking position where each SAS RAID Controller in [Device Manager] window is mounted. For method of identifying position where SAS RAID Controller is mounted, see F.2 Method of identifying position where SAS RAID Controller.



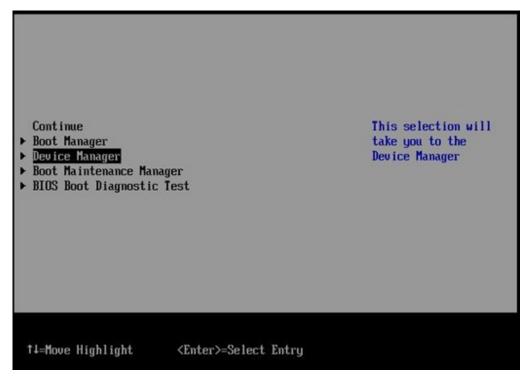


F.2 Method of identifying position where SAS RAID Controller is mounted

This section describes how to identify position where SAS RAID Controller displayed in [Device Manager] window is mounted.

1. Select [Device Manager] and press [Enter] key in [Boot Manager] window.

FIGURE F.0.3 [Boot Manager] window



2. Select SAS RAID Controller in [Device Manager].

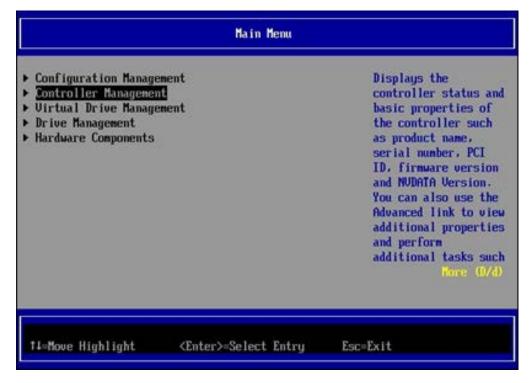
HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window is displayed.

Device Manager	
Devices List • System Information	Manage RAID Controller
iSCSI Configuration	Configurations.
CPU Configuration	
Memory Configuration	
USB Configuration	
Security Configuration	
Debug Configuration	
sadump Configuration	
LSI MegaRAID <praid ep400i=""> Configuration Util 03.09.06.03</praid>	ity -
Enulex iSCSI Utility - 140:0:2	
Emulex iSCSI Utility - 140:0:3	
Emulex iSCSI Utility - 143:0:2	
Emulex iSCSI Utility - 143:0:3	
	4
14=Move Highlight <enter>=Select Entry</enter>	Esc=Exit

FIGURE F.0.4 [Device Manager] window

3. Select [Controller Management] in HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window.

FIGURE F.0.5 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window



 Check the Slot Numbers in HII Configuration Utility [Controller management] window. Slot Numbers is displayed at the row of PCI Slot Numbers in HII Configuration Utility [Controller management] window.

In example of FIGURE F.0.6 HII Configuration Utility [Controller Management], Slot Numbers is 49.

- In Case that Slot Numbers is not zero.

The position where SAS RAID Controller is mounted can identify using by Slot Numbers. For the correspondence between PCI slot mounting locations and Slot Numbers, see Appendix D.2 correspondence between PCI slot mounting locations and Slot Numbers in PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Administration Manual (CA92344-053).

- In Case that Slot Numbers is zero.

This shows that SAS RAID Controller is mounted on SB. If there is only one SB in the partition, the SAS RAID Controller is mounted on the SB. There is additional procedure if there are two SBs or more in the partition. For the additional procedure, see F.3 Method of identifying SB where SAS RAID Controller is mounted.

In example of FIGURE F.0.6 HII Configuration Utility [Controller Management], Slot Numbers of the SAS RAID Controller is 49 and the SAS RAID Controller is mounted to PCI Express Slot#1 on DU#1.

	Controller Management	
Firmuare Update Discard Preserved Cache		Allows you to update the controller
Silence Alarm		firmware to a newer version.
BASIC PROPERTIES:	DRAYD PRACE.	
Product Name Serial Number	PRAID EP400i 0000000045117096	
Controller Status	<pre>(Optimal)</pre>	
Select Boot Device	<pre><virtual 0:<br="" drive="">GenericR0_0, RAID0, 1856B, Optimal></virtual></pre>	
PCI ID	8x100010x005D10x173410x1	11F
PCI Slot Number	49	
Package Version	24.5.0-0031	
		1
†∔=Move Highlight <i< td=""><td>Enter>=Select Entry Es</td><td>sc=Exit</td></i<>	Enter>=Select Entry Es	sc=Exit

FIGURE F.0.6 HII Configuration Utility [Controller Management] window

F.3 Method of identifying SB where SAS RAID Controller is

mounted

This section describes how to identify SB where SAS RAID Controller displayed in [Device Manager] window is mounted.

The SB where SAS RAID Controller is mounted can be identified by procedure below.

- Turn on Alarm LED of HDD/SSD connected to the SAS RAID Controller.
- Search the SB with HDD/SSD blinked Alarm LED in chassis.
- It is the SB that the SAS RAID Controller is mounted.
- 1. Select [Device Manager] and press [Enter] key in [Boot Manager] window.

FIGURE F.0.7 [Boot Manager] window



Select SAS RAID Controller in [Device Manager] window.
 HII Configuration Utility [Mein Menu] window is displayed.



FIGURE F.0.8 [Device Manager] window

3. Select [Device Management] in HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window.

FIGURE F.0.9 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window



4. Select one HDD/SSD connected to the SAS RAID Controller.

FIGURE F.0.10 HII Configuration Utility [Device management] window

	Drive Management	
▶ Drive Port 0 - 3:01:00: S	AS, 18568, Online, (5	Displays the properties of a specific drive. You can perform several operations (such as Rebuild. Initialize drive). view basic properties of the drive and also click Advanced to view additional properties.
†∔=Move Highlight <e< th=""><th>inter>=Select Entry</th><th>Esc=Exit</th></e<>	inter>=Select Entry	Esc=Exit

5. Select [Start Locate] in [Select operation] window.

FIGURE F.0.11 HII Configuration Utility [Select operation] window



6. Select [Go].

FIGURE F.0.12 HII Configuration Utility [Device Management] window

Operation BASIC PROPERTIES: Drive ID Status Size Type	<start locate=""> Port 0 - 3:01:00 <online> 186 GB <disk></disk></online></start>	Starts the selected operation or opens another form.
Model Hardware Vendor Associated Virtual Drive	PX02SMF020 TOSHIBA <virtual 0:<br="" drive="">GenericR0_0, RAID0, 1856B, Optimal></virtual>	
Advanced		
†4=Move Highlight <e< td=""><td>dan)-Palaat Fatau I</td><td></td></e<>	dan)-Palaat Fatau I	

7. Select [OK].

FIGURE F.0.13 HII Configuration Utility [Success] window



 Search the SB with HDD/SSD blinked Alarm LED in chassis.
 Alarm LED of HDD/SSD is orange LED located in HDD/SSD's upper right. The SAS RAID Controller mounted on the SB is SAS RAID Controller selected in [Device Manager] window.



FIGURE F.0.14 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window

9. Turn off Alarm LED of HDD/SSD.

Select [Stop Locate] in [Select operation] window.

FIGURE F.0.15 HII Configuration Utility [Select operation] window

Go BASIC PROPERTIES: Drive ID Status Size Type Model Hardware Vendor Associated Virtual D	Port 0 - 3:01:00 Select operation Start Locate Stop Locate Place Drive Offline rive GenericR0_0, RAID0, 1856B, Optimal>	that you can perform on a drive.
▶ Advanced		

10. Select [Go]. Then, select [OK] in displayed window.

FIGURE F.0.16 HII Configuration Utility [Device management] window

Operation BASIC PROPERTIES: Drive ID Status Size Type Model Hardware Vendor Associated Virtual Drive		Starts the selected operation or opens another form.
• Advanced 14=Move Highlight <e< th=""><th>GenericR0_0, RAID0, 18568, Optimal></th><th></th></e<>	GenericR0_0, RAID0, 18568, Optimal>	

11. Check Alarm LED of HDD/SSD has been turned off.

Then, press escape key several times until following window is displayed.

Press Y key or N key. Press N key when you execute only blinking and turning off Alarm LED.

FIGURE F.0.17 HII Configuration Utility [Main Menu] window

Hain	Menu
 Configuration Management Controller Management Virtual Drive Management Drive Management Har 	Displays the basic drive properties and performs operations such as
Changes have not saved.	Save Changes and exit? discard and exit, 'ESC' to cancel.
	additional properties using the Advanced link.
14=Move Highlight <enter>=Select</enter>	Entry Esc=Exit

12. [Device Manager] window is displayed.

FIGURE F.0.18 [Device Manager] window

Device Manager	
Devices List > System Information > iSCSI Configuration > CPU Configuration > Memory Configuration > USB Configuration > Security Configuration > Debug Configuration > adump Configuration > ISI MegaRAID <praid ep400i=""> Configuration U4 03.09.06.03 > Emulex iSCSI Utility - 140:0:2</praid>	Manage RAID Controller Configurations.
 Emulex iSCSI Utility - 140:0:3 Emulex iSCSI Utility - 143:0:2 Emulex iSCSI Utility - 143:0:3 	
 Emulex iSCSI Utility - 140:0:2 Emulex iSCSI Utility - 140:0:3 Emulex iSCSI Utility - 143:0:2 	∔ Esc=Exit

Appendix G Starting Web BIOS

This appendix describes how to start Web BIOS.

 Select [Force boot into EFI Boot Manager] from [Boot Selector] in [Power Control] window of MMB Web-UI.

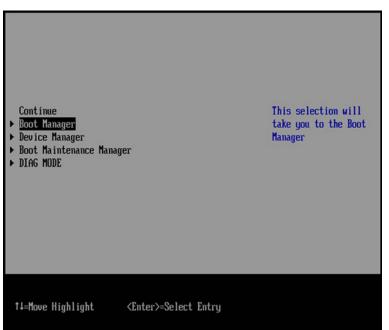
Partition is powered on and Boot Manager front page appears.

FIGURE G.1 Boot Manager front page (1)

Continue • Boot Manager • Device Manager • Boot Maintenance • DIAG MODE	Manager	This selection will take you to the Boot Manager
1↓=Move Highlight	<enter>=Select Entry</enter>	

2. Select [Boot Manager] and press [Enter] key. [Boot Manager] window appears.

FIGURE G.2 Boot Manager front page (2)



3. Select [EFI Internal Shell] and press [Enter] key. UEFI Shell starts up.

FIGURE G.3 Boot Manager menu

	Boot Option Menu Fujitsu Virtual CDROM Fujitsu Virtual CDROM EFI: Fujitsu Virtual CDROM EFI: Fujitsu Virtual CD EFI: Fujitsu Virtual CD EFI USB Device 2 EFI USB Device 3 EFI USB Device 3 EFI USB Device 4 EFI USB Device 5 EFI SCSI Device 5 EFI SCSI Device 1 EFI SCSI Device 1 EFI Internal Shell	1 1.00 ROMO 1.00	Device Path : Fv(9CABB6F2-BF13-4DE8- AA3C-3EA9EFF76A85)/FvJ ile(C57AD6B7-0515-40A -9D21-551652854E37)
--	---	---------------------	---

4. Input below command on UEFI Shell.

Shell> drivers

5. Driver list appears.

FIGURE G.4 Driver list

	ell version 2.31 [0.38]
Current	t running mode 1.1.2
Device	mapping table
b1k0	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1A,0x0) /USB (0x0,0x0) /USB (0x4,0x0) /Unit (0x0)
blk1	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1A,0x0) /USB (0x0,0x0) /USB (0x4,0x0) /Unit (0x1)
b1k2	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1A,0x0) /USB (0x0,0x0) /USB (0x4,0x0) /Unit (0x2)
b1k3	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1A,0x0) /USB (0x0,0x0) /USB (0x4,0x0) /Unit (0x3)
blk4	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1A,0x0) /USB (0x0,0x0) /USB (0x4,0x0) /Unit (0x4)
b1k5	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1A,0x0) /USB (0x0,0x0) /USB (0x4,0x0) /Unit (0x5)
b1k6	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1C,0x0) /Pci (0x0,0x0) /Ctrl (0x0) /Scsi (0x1,0x0)
blk7	:Removable BlockDevice - Alias (null)
	PcieRoot (0x0) /Pci (0x1C,0x0) /Pci (0x0,0x0) /Ctrl (0x0) /Scsi (0x2,0x0)
Press 1	CSC in 1 seconds to skip startup.nsh, any other key to continue.
Shell>	dr ivers_

For details on UEFI operation, see "*PRIMEQUEST 2000 series User Interface Operating Instructions*" (CA92344-0538) and "*PRIMEQUEST 2000 series Tool Reference*" (CA92344-0539).

Note

If driver list does not fall within window, input 'drivers –b'. Driver list is shown by a page.

 Check the number of UEFI driver and the number of LSI EFI SAS Driver. In below example, the number of UEFI driver is '126'.

D R V	VERSION	P	C F	Ĥ	#D	#C	DRIVER NAME	INAGE NAME
==		=			==	==		
							POST Watchdog Driver	PostWatchdogDriver
							PCI VGA Mini Port Driver	VgaMiniPort
							Platform Console Management Driver	
							Platform Console Management Driver	
							Console Splitter Driver	ConSplitterDxe
							Console Splitter Driver	ConSplitterDxe
							Console Splitter Driver	ConSplitterDxe
85	0000000A	B			2	2	Console Splitter Driver	ConSplitterDxe
							Console Splitter Driver	ConSplitterDxe
							Graphics Console Driver	GraphicsConsoleDxe
							VGA Class Driver	VgaClassDxe
80	0000000A	В			2	2	Serial Terminal Driver	TerminalDxe
8D	0000000A	D			14		Generic Disk I/O Driver	DiskIoDxe
8E	000000B	В			2	4	Partition Driver(MBR/GPT/El Torito)	PartitionDxe
91	0000000A	D			1		PC-AT ISA Device Enumeration Driver	IsaAcpi
92	0000000A	В			1	6	ISA Bus Driver	IsaBusDxe
93	0000000A	В			2	2	ISA Serial Driver	IsaSerialDxe
120	6 0600030	0 1	B>	{ }	1		2 LSI EFI SAS Driver	Offset (0xDA00,0x14
							2 LSI EFI SAS Driver	Offset (0xDA00,0x14
She	ell>_							

FIGURE G.5 drivers command of UEFI Shell

Shell> dh -d 126

7.

In below example, the controller number is '125'.

FIGURE G.6 dh command of UEFI Shell

```
        C4
        00000021
        B
        -
        1
        1
        G200e
        Matrox
        Graphics
        UEFI
        Driver

        C5
        05051900
        B
        X
        1
        1
        Intel(R)
        PR0/1000
        5.5.19
        PCI-E

        C6
        03061600
        B
        -
        X
        2
        2
        Intel(R)
        10GbE
        Driver
        3.6.16
        x64

        CD
        FFFFFF0
        -
        -
        Network
        Device
        Shadow
        Device

                                                                                                                                                    FvFile (961578FE-B6
                                                                                                                                                    FuFile (EDB39419-A4
                                                                                                                                                    FuFile (EDB39419-A4
                                                                                                                                                   LegacyNetworkShadowD
126 06000300 B X X 1 2 LSI EFI SAS Driver
141 06000300 B X X 1 2 LSI EFI SAS Driver
                                                                                                                                                     Offset(0xDA00,0x14
Offset(0xDA00,0x14
 Shell> dh -d 126
126: Image(Offset(0xDA00.0x149FF)) ImageDevPath (...,0x0)/Offset(0xDA00.0x149FF)
)DriverBinding Diagnostics Diagnostics2 ComponentName ComponentName2 Configurati
 on Configuration2
             Driver Name
                                                      LSI EFI SAS Driver
             Image Name
                                                     Offset (0xDA00,0x149FF)
             Driver Version :
                                                     06000300
             Driver Type
                                                      BUS
                                                      YES
             Configuration
            Diagnostics
                                                      YES
           Managing :

Ctrl [125] : LSI MegaRAID SAS 9286CU-8e

Child[220] : Logical Channel

Child[221] : Physical Channel
 Shell>
```

- Execute the drvcfg –s XX YY command.
 Specify the following for [XX] and [YY].
 - XX: UEFI driver number confirmed in step 2
 - YY: Controller number confirmed in step 3

Shell> drvcfg -s 126 125

 The window where you select either EFI WebBIOS menu or EFI CLI menu appears. Select [1 for EFI WebBIOS].



FIGURE G.7 selection of EFI WebBIOS / EFI CLI

10. WebBIOS starts up.

The figure below is example of window of WebBIOS.



Adapter No.	Bus No.	Device No.	Туре	Firmware Pkg. Version
0. 💿	66	0	LSI MegaRAID SAS 9286CV-8e	23.9.0-0029
1. 🥥	251	0	RAID Ctrl SAS 6G 1GB (D3116C)	23.9.0-0029

Appendix H Allocation Order of PCI Bus Number

Allocation rule is that PCI Bus number is allocated from a PCI Express Port of CPU toward an end device in order of increasing device number. This is a standard implementation of PCI Bus.

Bus number is allocated in order of IOU#1 -> IOU#0 -> IOU#3 -> IOU#2.

When setting PCI address mode in "PCI Bus mode" and adding IOU to system which has started operation, we recommend adding IOU to low-priority slot so that it does not affect Bus number of the IOU which has been already allocated.

Allocation rule of PCI Bus number when IOU_1GbE is installed in partition

Allocation rule of PCI Bus number when IOU_1GbE is installed in partition is as follows. Numbers within [] show allocation priority of PCI Bus number.

IOU#1 (IOU_1GbE#1)

- [1] RAID Slot#1 in DU#0 (RAID Slot of side connecting with IOU_1GbE#1)
- [2] GbE -> PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#1 -> PCIe Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#1
- [3] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#1 (*1)
- [4] PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#1
- [5] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#1 (*1)

<u>IOU#0 (IOU_1GbE#0)</u>

- [6] RAID Slot#0 in DU#0 (RAID Slot of side connecting with IOU_1GbE#0)
- [7] GbE -> PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#1 -> PCIe Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#0
- [8] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#0 (*1)
- [9] PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#0
- [10] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#0 (*1) IOU#3 (IOU_1GbE#3)
- [11] RAID Slot#1 in DU#1 (RAID Slot of side connecting with IOU_1GbE#3)
- [12] GbE -> PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#1 -> PCIe Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#3
- [13] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#3 (*1)
- [14] PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#3
- [15] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#3 (*1) IOU#2 (IOU_1GbE#2)
- [16] RAID Slot#0 in DU#1 (RAID Slot of side connecting with IOU_1GbE#2)
- [17] GbE -> PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#1 -> PCIe Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#2
- [18] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#2
- [19] PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#2
- [20] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCI Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#2 (*1)
- (*1) Allocation order of PCI Express slots in PCI_Box is as follows.
- PCIe Slot#2 -> PCIe Slot#4 -> PCIe Slot#3 -> PCIe Slot#1 -> PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#5
- -> PCIe Slot#8 -> PCIe Slot#10 -> PCIe Slot#9 -> PCIe Slot#7 -> PCIe Slot#6 -> PCIe Slot#11

Allocation rule of PCI Bus number when IOU_10GbE is installed in partition

Allocation rule of PCI Bus number when IOU_10GbE is installed in partition is as follows. Numbers within [] show allocation priority of PCI Bus number.

IOU#1 (IOU_10GbE#1)

- [1] PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GBE#1
- [2] PCIe slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GbE#1 (*2)
- [3] GbE in IOU_10GbE#1
- [4] RAID Slot#1 in DU#0 (a side connecting with IOU_10GbE#1)
- [5] PCIe Slot#1 in IOU_10GbE#1

IOU#0 (IOU_10GbE#0)

- [6] PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GbE#0
- [7] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GbE#0 (*2)
- [8] GbE in IOU_10GBE#0
- [9] RAID Slot#0 in DU#0 (a side connecting with IOU_10GbE#0)
- [10] PCIe Slot#1 in IOU_10GBE#0

IOU#3 (IOU_10GbE#3)

- [11] PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GBE#3
- [12] PCI Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GbE#3 (*2)
- [13] GbE in IOU_10GBE#3
- [14] RAID Slot#1 in DU#1 (a side connecting with IOU_10GBE#3)
- [15] PCIe Slot#1 in IOU_10GBE#3

IOU#2 (IOU_10GbE#2)

- [16] PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GBE#2
- [17] PCIe Slots in PCI_Box connecting with PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GbE#2 (*2)
- [18] GbE in IOU_10GBE#2
- [19] DU#1 の RAID Slot#0 (a side connecting with IOU_10GBE#2)
- [20] PCIe Slot#1 in IOU_10GBE#2
- (*2) Allocation order of PCI Express slot is same in case of IOU_1GbE.

Example

Example when IOU_1GbE and IOU_10GbE are mixed and installed in partition is shown. When IOU_10GbE#1 and IOUGbE#2 are included in partition, allocation order is as follows.

IOU#1 (IOU_10GbE#1)

- [1] PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GbE#1
- [2] PCIe Slot in PCI_Box connecting with PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_10GbE#1(*1)
- [3] GbE in IOU_10GbE#1
- [4] RAID Slot#1 in DU#0 (a side connecting with IOU_10GbE#1)
- [5] PCIe Slot#1 in IOU_10GbE#1

IOU#2 (IOU_1GbE#2)

- [6] RAID Slot#0 in DU#1 (RAID Slot of a side connecting with IOU_1GbE #2)
- [7] GbE -> PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#1-> PCIe Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#2
- [8] PCIe Slot in PCI_Box connecting with PCIe Slot#3 in IOU_1GbE#2 (*1)
- [9] PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#2

[10] PCIe Slot in PCI_Box connecting PCIe Slot#2 in IOU_1GbE#2 (*1)

(*1) Allocation order of PCI Express slot in PCI_Box is as follows.

PCIe Slot#2 -> PCIe Slot#4 ->PCIe Slot#3 -> PCIe Slot#1 -> PCIe Slot#0 -> PCIe Slot#5

-> PCIe Slot#8 -> PCIe Slot#10 ->PCIe Slot#9 -> PCIe Slot#7 -> PCIe Slot#6 -> PCIe Slot#11

